GUIDE TO THE EAST SLAVONIC LANGUAGES

(Guide To The Slavonic Languages,
Third Edition, Revised And Expanded, Part 3)

by

R. G. A. de Bray

Fellow of the
Australian
Academy
of Humanities

1980

Slavica Publishers, Inc.

For a list of some other books from Slavica, see the last pages of this book. For a complete catalog with prices and ordering information, write to: Slavica Publishers, Inc.
P.O. Box 14388
Columbus, Ohio 43214

Published with the financial assistance of the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO). The opinions expressed in this book are those of the author, and not necessarily those of either the publisher or UNESCO.

ISBN: 0-89357-062-1.

Copyright © 1951 by J. M. Dent & Sons Ltd., London; revisions copyright © 1969 and 1980 by R. G. A. de Bray. All rights reserved.

426
SK

Printed in the United States of America by LithoCrafters, Inc., Chelsea, Michigan 48118.

To the memory of

Robert Auty

Colleague, counsellor,
and friend

CONTENTS

PUBLISHER'S NOTE....7
PREFACES....9
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED....13

INTRODUCTION

THE PURPOSE OF THIS BOOK....15
THE PLAN AND ARRANGEMENT OF THIS BOOK....16
THE METHOD OF USING THIS BOOK....18
THE DISTRIBUTION OF THE SLAVONIC LANGUAGES....20
CHARACTERISTICS OF THE SLAVONIC LANGUAGES....22
THE IMPORTANCE OF OLD SLAVONIC....23

BIBLIOGRAPHY

RUSSIAN....25
UKRAINIAN....28
BYELORUSSIAN....29
THE SLAVONIC GROUP....30

Section 1.
RUSSIAN

INTRODUCTION....31
ALPHABET....38
PRONUNCIATION....39
DIALECTS....42
VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING....48
SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS....48
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF RUSSIAN....50
MORPHOLOGY....52
Declensions of—
nouns....53
adjectives (note on)....57
numerals....57
pronouns....60
adjectives....62
Adjectives (Comparison)....65
Adverbs....67
Conjunctions and Particles....70
Prepositions....71
Conjugation of Verbs....72
Voices and tenses; Present and Infinitive....72
Classification....74
Future tense and aspects....75
Past tense....77
Conditional....78
Imperative....78

Gerunds....80
Participles....81
Conjugation, examples....83
Irregular verbs....85
Verbs of going and conveying....88
TEXTS....90

Section 2.
UKRAINIAN

INTRODUCTION....95
ALPHABET....101
PRONUNCIATION....102
DIALECTS....108
VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING....110
SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS....111
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN....114
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN AND BYELORUSSIAN....115
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN, GREAT RUSSIAN, AND BYELORUSSIAN....117
MORPHOLOGY....118
Declensions of—
nouns....118
numerals....129
pronouns....132
adjectives....137
Adjectives (Comparison)....139
Adverbs....141
Conjunctions....144
Prepositions....144
Conjugation of Verbs....147
Voices and tenses; Present and Infinitive....147
Classification....150
Future tense and aspects....151
Past tense....153
Pluperfect....155
Conditional....155
Imperative....155
Gerunds....157
Participles....158
Verbal nouns....160
Conjugation, examples....161
Irregular verbs....162
Verbs of going and conveying....166
TEXTS....169

Section 3.
BYELORUSSIAN

INTRODUCTION.....174
ALPHABET.....178
PRONUNCIATION.....181
DIALECTS.....189
VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING.....191
SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS.....192
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN.....195
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN AND GREAT RUSSIAN.....196
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN AND UKRAINIAN.....196
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN, GREAT RUSSIAN, AND UKRAINIAN.....199
MORPHOLOGY.....201
Declensions of—
nouns.....202
numerals.....212
pronouns.....215
adjectives.....219
Adjectives (Comparison).....221
Adverbs.....222
Conjunctions.....224
Prepositions.....225
Conjugation of Verbs.....227
Voices and tenses; Present and Infinitive...227
Classification.....230
Future tense and aspects.....232
Future Perfect.....234
Past tense.....234
Pluperfect.....236
Conditional.....236
Imperative.....237
Gerunds.....238
Participles.....239
Verbal nouns.....240
Conjugation, examples.....241
Irregular verbs.....243
Verbs of going and conveying.....245
TEXTS.....247

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

Slavica is very pleased to be able to make available this Third, revised and expanded edition of Professor de Bray's work, which has been a standard reference for nearly thirty years. Eight of the twelve sections have been substantially revised for this edition, and considerable new material has been included.

In order to make the work even more useful, the author has recorded native speakers reading the texts at the end of each section. These recordings are available on cassettes or open-reel tapes from the publisher. For information and prices, please write directly to Slavica at P.O. Box 14388, Columbus, Ohio 43214.

Another innovation in the Third Edition is that the book has been split into three more manageable parts, each of which can be used individually, instead of a single book of over 1100 pages. One part is devoted to the South Slavic languages, a second to the West Slavic languages, and the third to the East Slavic languages. Since the parts are sold separately, students taking such commonly-taught courses as "Introduction to the South (West, East) Slavic Languages" will be able to use the appropriate volume, without having to buy and carry around the entire work.

Because the academic recession of the 1970's has so strongly depressed the market for scholarly books, it has been necessary to set this edition in more economical cold type, instead of the more elegant hot type with justified right margins which was used in the previous two editions. Slavica is grateful to UNESCO for a subvention which has met part of the costs of resetting the book. We are even more grateful to the typists who have done such a good job of coping with very difficult material. Eleanor B. Sapp typed the sections on Czech, Lusatian, Polish, and Slovenian. Karen L. Black typed the sections on Belorussian, Serbo-Croatian, Ukrainian, and much of the section on Old Church Slavonic. Debra E. Barco typed Bulgarian and Macedonian; Marcia Gauntt typed Slovak; David Birnbaum and Patricia Hansen typed Russian, and Joel and Monica Wilkinson typed part of the section on Old Church Slavonic. Dr. Black took overall responsibility for paginating, cross-referencing, checking corrections, and typing the Introduction and

Bibliography. I wish to thank her here for a complex job well done. Don D. Smith was in charge of checking the corrections from the second proofs and of making various other small but important corrections and improvements in the final camera-ready copy. I am grateful to him for careful attention to tedious and time-consuming work.

We have tried hard, by a system of double and even triple checking, to eliminate misprints, but some are bound to creep into a work of this complexity. Readers who find misprints are asked to send a list of them to the publisher at P.O. Box 14388, Columbus, Ohio 43214. A year or two after the publication of this work, we will publish a list of misprints in our journal, *Folia Slavica*, so that both individuals and libraries may correct their copies.

Columbus, Ohio
May 17, 1980

Charles E. Gribble
President and Editor

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

It is my pleasant duty to acknowledge with gratitude here the many useful suggestions and the generous encouragement of Professor N. B. Jopson, M.A., Professor of Comparative Philology in the University of Cambridge, Professor W. J. Rose, M.A., Ph.D., former Professor of Polish Literature and History and Director of the School of Slavonic and East European Studies, University of London, and Dr. W. A. Morison, B.A., Ph.D., formerly Lecturer in Comparative Slavonic Philology in the same institution. My sincere thanks are also due to Professor Sir Ellis Minns, Litt.D., F.B.A., of Cambridge, for looking through the first part of this text and making many valuable suggestions, especially as regards presentation, and also for his initial encouragement, without which this book might never have been offered for publication.

I also here express my sincere thanks to my numerous colleagues and friends for their invaluable help and advice with regard to the separate sections of this book: Professor G. Nandriş, Ph.D., Mr. A. Oleynyk, Professor S. Świaniewicz, Professor F. Ramovš, Miss Boža Anžič, Mr. Krum Tošev, Mr. Kiro Petrovski, Mr. D. M. Pavlović, Mr. A. Poberaj, Miss V. Jukova, Mr. K. Naumov, Mr. V. de S. Pinto, Mr. M. Kusseff, Dr. J. Pietrkiewicz, Dr. O. Kolman, Dr. V. Polák, Mrs. E. V. de Bray, Miss T. Ruppeldtová, Dr. E. M. Cyžowa, Dr. J. Rjenč, Rev. Dr. Č. Sipovič, and many others.

It gives me pleasure also specially to mention the tireless help, encouragement, and expert criticism of my wife, who also performed the stupendous feat of typing the entire work in preparation for printing. Her knowledge of several Slavonic languages and her understanding and sympathy with the aims of my work enabled her to make many valuable suggestions in shaping the book.

I would also like to thank my publishers, Messrs. J. M. Dent and Sons, Ltd., for their endless patience and unfailing encouragement in the writing of this work over a period of seven years and under various difficult circumstances.

Finally I warmly thank my printers, Messrs. Stephen Austin and Sons, Ltd., for their untiring perseverance and unfailing courtesy during the printing of my technically extremely difficult text and for the production of such excellent work.

The brief bibliography also serves the purpose of expressing my acknowledgments of indebtedness to the authors of the many valuable works which I have consulted. The list is not intended to be an exhaustive bibliography, but rather a guide to the student who wishes to start delving deeper for treasures which I here only indicate. (The purpose, plan, and method of using this book are explained in the following Introduction.)

Chalfont St. Giles
15. iv. 1950

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

In this edition the sections on Bulgarian, Czech and Polish have been corrected, revised and slightly expanded, where necessary. The section on Byelorussian has been fully revised and brought up to date in accordance with the new authoritative grammar of Byelorussian published by the Institute of Linguistics of the Byelorussian Academy of Sciences in Minsk. Some misprints have also been corrected in the section on Slovak.

A selection of the most important new practical works published since 1951 have been added to the bibliography.

I would like to express my warmest thanks to Dr. Václav Polák, Professor Ivan Duridanov, and Professor M. R. Sudnik and his colleagues in the Institute of Linguistics of the Byelorussian Academy of Sciences, Minsk, and to all my reviewers for their many helpful suggestions and criticisms.

New Barnet
11. x. 1968

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

For this edition the author has attempted to revise and bring up to date all the chapters that had not been thoroughly revised for the second edition, namely the chapters on Old Slavonic, Russian, Ukrainian, Macedonian, Serbo-Croätian, Slovenian, Slovak and Lusatian (Sorbian). A number of new grammatical tables have been added, especially in the chapters on Old Slavonic and Serbo-Croätian, and the introduction to the chapter on Russian has been considerably expanded. In the chapter on Ukrainian a more modern approach to the subdivision of the dialects has been adopted on lines suggested by Professor F. T. Zhylkó of the Institute of Dialectology in Kiev. The chapters on Macedonian, Slovak and Lusatian in particular have been revised so as to comply with modern orthographical and grammatical norms. The chapters on Byelorussian, Bulgarian, Czech and Polish, which were revised for the second edition, have only been lightly revised, where necessary.

It is my pleasant duty to thank all my colleagues and friends who have helped me with advice, opinions and information in connection with my work for this edition, and in particular Professor R. I. Avanesov, Professor V. A. Artemov, Professor O. S. Akhmanova, Dr. E. A. Bryzgunova, Mr. B. K. Yoondin, Dr. I. Miloslavsky, Professor A. M. Babkin, Professor L. R. Zinder, Mr. V. Swoboda, Professor F. T. Zhylkó (mentioned above), Professor M. Zhovtobriuch and other colleagues at the Institute of Linguistics of the Ukrainian Academy of Sciences in Kiev, Academic B. Koneski, Academic H. Polenakoviḱ, the late Professor Krum Toshev, Professor T. Stamatoski, Professor T. Dimitrovski, Professor B. Korubin and other colleagues at the Krste Misirkov Institute of the Macedonian Language, Skopje, Professor B. Vidoeski, Miss Olga Spirkoska, Professor M. Stevanović, the late Dr. B. Nikolić, Professor P. Ivić, Professor M. Ivić, Dr. I. Grickat-Radulović, Dr. O. Banković-Todorović and other colleagues of the Serbo-Croatian Language Institute of the Serbian Academy of Sciences, Academic L. Jonke, Dr. B. Finka, Dr. V. Putanec, Dr. D. Alerić and other colleagues of the Language Institute of the Yugoslav Academy of Sciences and Arts, Zagreb, Professor J. Jurančič, Dr. J. Rigler, Professor A. Bajec, Professor M. Tomšič, Dr. L. Legiša, and other colleagues of the Slovenian Language Institute of the Slovenian Academy of Sciences and Arts, Ljubljana, Professor J. Toporišič, Professor J. Zor, Professor J. Ružička, Professor L. Dvonč, and Professor V. Blanár of the L'udevit Štúr Institute of the Slovak Language of the Slovak Academy of Sciences, Miss Eva Ružičková, Dr. R. Pynsent, Dr. M. Corbridge-Patkaniowska, Professor H. Schuster-Šewc, Dr. L. Hajnec, Professor P. Nowotny, and Mr. J. Rjenč.

It is my pleasure also to acknowledge with sincere thanks the material help proffered by the Central Research Fund of the University of London and also by the Australian National University. Both generously helped me to make numerous visits to the Slavonic-speaking countries of Eastern Europe in pursuit of my research. I also express my gratitude to the then

Director of the School of Slavonic and East European Studies, University of London, Dr. G. Bolsover, to the Vice-Chancellor of the Australian National University in Canberra, Professor D. A. Low, and to the Dean of the Faculty of Arts, Dr. W. S. Ramson, for granting me study leave for research purposes between 1968 and 1976, without which I would not have had the opportunity to collect the necessary material for the completion of this work. To all the abovementioned, to my secretary of the Department of Slavonic Languages, the Australian National University, Ms. K. North, and to my publishers for their interest and continual support, I offer my most heartfelt thanks.

Finally, I wish to express my deep gratitude to the Slav Studies project of UNESCO, under the able guidance of Professor V. Tiourine, for their subsidy which enabled the project of the publication of this work to be realized.

If this work will in any way help its readers the better to understand the Slavonic languages, literatures and culture, and the peoples who have created them, it will have achieved its modest purpose.

молю же вьсѣхъ почитающихъ· не
можѣте клати, нъ исправльше почитаните.
тако бо и стъі апл҃ъ паулъ глеть·
бл҃те, а не кльнѣте. аминъ.

Canberra
1 July 1977

ABBREVIATIONS

A., Acc.	Accusative
Act.	Active
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
an.	animate
Aor.	Aorist
approx.	approximate
arch.	archaic
art.	article
aux.	auxiliary
b.	born
B-r., Byelor.	Byelorussian
Bulg.	Bulgarian
Card.	Cardinal
cf.	compare
Cl.	class
coll.	collective
colloq.	colloquial
Comp.	Comparative
Comp. Past	Compound Past
Cond.	Conditional
conj.	conjunction
cons.	consonant
Cr.	Croatian
C.S.	Common Slav
Cyr.	Cyrillic
Cz.	Czech
d.	died
D., Dat.	Dative
Demonstr.	Demonstrative
def.	definite
dial.	dialect
Distrib.	Distributive
du.	dual
ed.	edition
encl.	enclitic
Eng.	English
fam.	familiar
f., fem.	feminine
Fr.	French
Freq.	Frequentative
Fut.	Future
g., gend.	genders
G., Gen.	Genitive
Germ.	German
Gk.	Greek
I., Instr.	Instrumental
I.E.	Indo-European
Imper., Imperat.	Imperative
Imperf.	Imperfect
impers.	impersonal
Impfve.	Imperfective
inan.	inanimate
Ind.	Indicative
indef.	indefinite
Infin.	Infinitive
interrog.	interrogative
intrans.	intransitive
irreg.	irregular
irr. vb.	irregular verb
Iter.	Iterative
L., Loc.	Locative (= Prepositional)
Lat.	Latin
L.L., Lower L.	Lower Lusatian
lit.	literally
lit. lang.	literary language
Lus.	Lusatian
m., masc.	masculine
Mac.	Macedonian
m. impers.	masculine impersonal
m. pers.	masculine personal
Mod. Gk.	Modern Greek
n., neut.	neuter
N., Nom.	Nominative
neg.	negative
num.	numeral
Obl.	Oblique (case)
Opt.	Optative
Ord.	Ordinal
O.S.	Old (Church) Slavonic
p.	page

p., pers.	person, personal	vol.	volume
pal.	palatal		
Part., Partic.	Participle	Zogr.	Codex Zographensis
Pass.	Passive	=	equals (translation)
Past Ger.	Past Gerund	>	into, becomes
Perf.	Perfect	<	from, derived from
Pers. Pron.	Personal Pronoun	><	as opposed to
Pfve.	Perfective	*	indicates a supposed, deduced form
phon.	phonetic script		
pl., plur.	plural		
Plup.	Pluperfect		
poet.	poetical		
Pol.	Polish		
Pos.	Positive		
Poss. Pron.	Possessive Pronoun		
P.P.A.	Past Participle Active		
P.P.P.	Past Participle Passive		
prep.	preposition		
Pres.	Present		
Pres. Ger.	Present Gerund		
pron.	pronounce(d)		
R., Russ.	Russian		
Reflex.	Reflexive		
reg.	regular		
Rel. Pron.	Relative Pronoun		
s., sg., sing.	singular		
Sb.	Serbian		
Sbcr., Serbocr.	Serbocroätian		
Slk.	Slovak		
Sln.	Slovenian		
Span.	Spanish		
st.	stem		
subst.	substantive		
Sup.	Superlative		
trans.	transitive		
Ukr.	Ukrainian		
U.L., Upper L.	Upper Lusatian		
V., Voc.	Vocative		
vb.	verb		
V.N.	Verbal Noun		

INTRODUCTION
The Purpose of this Book

This book is an attempt to simplify the task of learning the Slav languages as a group for those who know one of them already. It was originally conceived during the 1939-1945 war with a more limited programme.[1] It has a scientific, philological basis. But as it is not intended exclusively for philologists and university students it is written on as nearly "popular" lines as such a subject permits, with a minimum of specialized terminology. It is intentionally an effort at popularization, as the writer believes that all those knowing any one Slavonic language can with profit widen their linguistic horizon by the relatively easy method of learning other Slavonic languages. Those knowing Russian should interest themselves in the Balkans and/or Central Europe, and *vice versa*. A consciousness would thus grow up of the unity of Europe and the continuity, both geographical and cultural, of Russia with Western Europe by way of the intervening central region of Eastern Europe.

It has been the writer's experience that many officials and workers in various fields and even teachers and examiners are given the task of dealing with material in the Slav languages as a group on the strength of their knowledge of only one of them. It is to help this class of language worker, among others, that this work aims. It should be equally useful to the student (whether academic or not) of any of the Slav languages (even if he is a beginner), when his curiosity drives him to "look over the fence" and find out something about the other Slavonic languages beyond.

It is thus also an introduction to the comparative study of the modern Slavonic languages. In these three volumes we give a summary of every language of the group, including Old Slavonic—a synthesis of a very extensive field of knowledge, difficult to master just because of the closeness of one Slav language to another. For every language we try to give a list of its most characteristic phonetic and morphological features, thus showing where the main differences and similarities should be expected and observed.

[1] See p. 18.

The Plan and Arrangement of this Book

For the sake of clarity and simplicity each language is treated in a separate section, giving the student a complete conspectus of a clearly defined subject—a single language. This is a new method of approach in dealing with comparative Slavonic grammar, calculated to suit the English beginner with only a modest experience in the Slavonic field. Many a student has found learned works from the Continent forbidding and confusing as an introduction to the comparative philology of the Slavonic languages, for these give as examples of the points they are illustrating rare and archaic words by the side of common words, words from obscure dialects by the side of words from the modern literary and conversational languages. From such works it is impossible to get a clear, working knowledge of any separate modern Slavonic literary or spoken language, for that is not what such books intend to impart. But the English student is often of a practical turn of mind and his needs may rightly be satisfied.

This book starts with a brief summary of the phonetics and grammar of Old Slavonic (also called Old Bulgarian). A knowledge of this dead language casts a great deal of light on the kinship of the modern Slavonic languages, just as a knowledge of Latin helps one to understand the Romance group of languages as a whole. But it must be borne in mind that Old Slavonic is not a "parent language," but rather an "elder sister" language of the *South* Slav group, preserved exclusively in Orthodox ecclesiastical texts. (The South Slav group also includes modern Bulgarian, Macedonian, Serbocroätian, and Slovenian.) Old Slavonic is the nearest we have today to "Common Slav," the "reconstructed" and supposed parent language of all three groups. The East Slav group consists of Russian, Ukrainian, and Byelorussian, while the Western group comprises Czech, Slovak, Polish, and Lusatian or Wendish. Old Slavonic differs from "Common Slav" in a number of important features, e.g. in the combinations of vowels and liquids. But on the whole it is sufficiently close to Common Slav to be used by the student as the essential pivot for passing from one Slavonic language to another.

Each section is built on the same plan:—

1. a brief history of the development of the language together with references to its main writers;

2. a more detailed section on its script and sounds (orthography and descriptive phonetics);
3. a summary of its characteristic features, presented in historical perspective, i.e. compared with Old Slavonic or Common Slav and/or the closely related modern Slav languages—perhaps the most important part of each section. This is either preceded or followed by:
4. a brief summary of the main dialects. These are dealt with mainly from the point of view of their contributions to the formation of the literary language. They are not regarded as "languages" in their own right and of equal status to the generally recognized literary languages. The existence of a literature in a given language and the acceptance and use of the language in a cultured society have been taken as the criteria for dividing off languages from dialects;
5. a concise summary of the "grammar" of the language (its morphology).
6. a special section, where necessary, on word order with enclitics. This subject is always a stumbling block in the mastery of an *active* knowledge of those languages which have enclitics (i.e. South and West Slav here);
7. a few pages of selected texts (without any commentary) as samples of the language as it is printed for the native (i.e. without stress accents) to serve as illustration and reading practice for the student.

Each section also adheres as rigidly as possible to the same scheme and order of explaining the details in the above parts, so as to render the comparison of these details between any two or more of these languages as easy as possible. A minimum of directly comparative tables is included, thereby leaving the student to compare *any* language he likes of the group with any other. This overcomes the difficulty of different people starting out from a knowledge of different single languages.

For Old Slavonic, Byelorussian, Slovenian, and Macedonian till late there have been no text-books at all in English, while for Ukrainian, Bulgarian, and Slovak until recently aids have been only inadequate. For these languages, therefore, fresh material is presented to the English reader; but at the same time it is put *in perspective* and connected with knowledge previously available. The section on the recently recognized Macedonian language is an entirely new

contribution to Slavonic studies in any West European language.

It will be seen, therefore, that this work also attempts to fill gaps in the knowledge of the English student, rather than cover familiar ground over again. For this reason less space is given to Russian (as already extensively treated and studied) and Serbocroätian for which grammars, similar to those for Russian, have been available. But Czech and Polish, owing to their complex morphology and the different arrangement of their grammars in the better works, have been rather more fully dealt with here to show their close connection with the other Slavonic languages. Relatively more space, therefore, is devoted to them and the languages named above for which material has so far been unavailable or only inadequate in English.

Any other disparities of length under the separate headings in each section are due to *(a)* the not sufficiently known lack of adequate material in this country, especially on the more obscure languages of this group; *(b)* the fact that the original wartime conception of the book covered only Old Slavonic, Russian, Serbocroätian, and Bulgarian, and that the greatest possible brevity for these was required.[1] The sections on these last-named languages have subsequently been revised and brought up to date, but not expanded to the length of the other sections, for the reasons given above.

As this book is mainly concerned with showing the general principles of phonetic and grammatical structure of each language rather than with the study of individual words, a word index has been deliberately omitted. In compensation, the contents have been tabulated as fully as possible to facilitate prompt comparison between the sections. Thus, for example, it is very easy to compare the behaviour of the adjectives in all the languages given by simply looking under the heading "The (Declension of the) Adjectives" under "Morphology" in the Contents List for each language.

The Method of Using this Book

The student should be warned that, as this book attempts a synthesis of a very vast field, the material given is necessarily very condensed. The student, therefore, and especially the beginner, should not attempt to absorb too much at a time. If he bites off

[1] See also p. 15.

a little at a time, he will more easily avoid mental indigestion.

As a general word of advice one may say that a person knowing one Slavonic language and approaching another for the first time is well advised to assume in the first place that he *knows* the new language in *outline*; and then—far more important and difficult—carefully and continuously to note and study all differences of phonetics, form, grammar, syntax, and meaning. He must always bear in mind that he is dealing with a really different language with different sounds, intonations, rhythms, and a different historical and sociological background, and different neighbouring influences. In the Slavonic field these languages are different and yet very similar and closely interlinked by linguistic, social and spiritual ties. Their literary vocabularies differ more than those in the Romance languages, and the "speech habits" in the conversational languages of the various Slavs are also very distinct. But the basic vocabulary for the ordinary things of everyday life is strikingly similar—a phenomenon which reminds one of the broad similarities of outlook and attitude to life which undoubtedly exist among the Slavs.

For the Englishman each Slavonic language presents its own difficulties and it would be fruitless to discuss which is the most difficult for him to master. But the difficulties to be met with can all be mastered in time by interest and enthusiasm, because the Slavs are, after all, distant cousins of the British, and often large passages of their languages can be translated literally and in almost the same word order and still make sense! This is impossible with more remote languages.

The importance also of using the brief section on Old Slavonic as a basis for learning another Slavonic language or for studying the whole group cannot be over-emphasized. The trouble of doing this will certainly be repaid and the task greatly facilitated. The student who takes this trouble will see in true perspective the relationship of one Slavonic language to another and gain a real mastery of several languages with an ease that will surprise him or her and give deep satisfaction.

Finally, the student is advised to make a careful study of the sound laws that can be inferred from the sections dealing with the characteristics of each language. Besides bringing out the salient differences of each tongue, these will explain many apparent irregularities and changes in the declensions and conjugations, etc. The importance of a patient study of the

phonology (Lautlehre, or historical phonetics) can hardly be overstressed.

For a more detailed description of the languages and for adequate exercises the student is referred to the special grammars of the languages concerned, a list of which is appended in the brief bibliography which precedes each of the three main language groups. Complete lists, e.g. of exceptions, details of syntax, etc., have purposely been often omitted for the sake of brevity, as has all such information as,e.g., the names of the days and months, which can be found in dictionaries.

Each section is furnished with a short appendix of texts on which the student is urged to try his skill with the knowledge he acquires from the study of the preceding pages. He will find he has embarked on a journey of endless fascination.

* * *

The ultimate aim of this work is to enable a direct and reliable approach to be made to the wider issues reflected in the Slavonic literatures and their background, through an accurate knowledge of the Slavonic languages, and so help to create true understanding and friendship between the Slav peoples, great and small, and the English-speaking world. The student is urged always to have these "wider issues" in view and to remember that even an *accurate* translation, if it is torn from its context and background, can be totally misleading and distort the truth. To know the reality, truth, and beauty of the Slavonic world is an unforgettable experience. It enriches and brings hope.

ὄναρ ἀντ' ὀνειράτων
πολλῶν τε καὶ καλῶν

The Distribution of the Slavonic Languages

The greater part of Eastern Europe between Germany and the Urals is inhabited by Slavs. In the western part of this area Polish, Czech, and Slovak are spoken, as well as Lusatian, or Wendish, in a small linguistic island south-east of Berlin round the towns of Cottbus and Bautzen. Together these four languages form the West Slav group.

Adjoining these areas, to the east, Byelorussian —or White Russian—and Ukrainian are spoken, which

together with Great Russian form the East Slav group. These linguistic areas are now in the U.S.S.R., but prior to 1939 they extended in the west to inside the frontiers of Poland for both languages, and into Czechoslovakia for Ukrainian only.

The Ukrainian language is essentially a unity, though in the west, in Galicia, it is naturally more influenced by Polish. The name Ruthenian came into English via German from non-classical Latin, being a corruption of the word "Rusin," meaning vaguely a Russian, more specifically a Ukrainian or "Little Russian," as they used to be called. This curious corruption of their name was a convenient cloak under the Austro-Hungarian Empire for disguising the essentially East Slav, or "Russian," character of their Ukrainian subjects (the name Russian really covers all three branches of the East Slav group, the people whom we know popularly as Russians being more precisely Great Russians). All Ukrainians now prefer the fairly modern name, Ukrainian. In more recent times "Ruthenian" came specifically to refer to Subcarpathian Russia, later called Transcarpathian Ukraine, at the extreme eastern end of pre-1939 Czechoslovakia and now incorporated into the Ukrainian S.S.R.—a convenient, but illogical, restriction of its meaning.

Byelorussian, a language even more akin to Great Russian than Ukrainian is to Great Russian, and with a very phonetic spelling, is even younger as a literary language and has also been called in some books White Ruthenian. In Polish the word "ruski" now means only Ruthenian or Ukrainian, whereas in Russian it means (Great) Russian. Owing to the political associations of the name "White Russian," Soviet authorities have also called it "Byelorussian," preserving the Russian word for "white".

North-east and east of the Byelorussian and Ukrainian speaking areas we find the Great Russian area, the language generally known loosely in English as Russian, the language of such great writers as Pushkin, Tolstoy, Dostoyevsky, etc. Geographically one might say that, whereas the Dniepr is the great river of the Ukraine, the Volga with its tributaries forms the chief artery of the Great Russian speaking area, but in its lower reaches it flows through territory peopled by many other nationalities besides the Great Russians. The Great Russian language spread across a sparsely populated Siberia from the seventeenth century onwards with the comparatively peaceful expansion of the Russian Empire across Northern Asia.

South of Austria, Hungary, and Romania, we have the area of the third, Southern, group of Slav tongues.

In the very north-west corner of it, Slovenian, or Slovene, is spoken by not quite two million people, still not all included in Yugoslavia. East and south of this area we have the Serbocroätian speaking region, corresponding roughly with Yugoslavia's northern, eastern, and south-western frontiers. By the Catholics of Croätia, Dalmatia, etc., and the Moslems of Bosnia, Serbocroätian is generally written in the Latin alphabet, whereas in Serbia the Cyrillic alphabet is prevalent; but as explained later, these and dialectical differences cannot be regarded as forming either racial or linguistic boundaries (the different alphabets are only an indication of a difference of religion), as the language is essentially one, i.e. mutually intelligible without previous study. This cannot truthfully be said of any other two Slav languages considered together except "Serbian" and "Croätian". In Southern Yugoslavia, Northern Greece and South-Western Bulgaria, the Macedonian dialects are prevalent. Linguistically they are somewhat more than a transitional stage to Bulgarian. Since 1944 the Macedonian literary language has been officially recognized for all purposes in the territory of the federative Macedonian People's Republic in Yugoslavia. Bulgarian is the fourth separate literary language of this (South Slav) group, spoken over an area pretty well corresponding to Bulgaria's political frontiers; and, owing to its greater divergence from Serbocroätian, it is classed by some (with Macedonian) as East South Slav as opposed to West South Slav.

Characteristics of the Slavonic Languages

Apart from the Cyrillic and the adapted Latin scripts which are purely superficial characteristics, the main features of the Slavonic languages are:—

Pronunciation:—

1. Varying degrees of "palatalization," i.e. variants of the consonants obtained by using the palate to alter their quality.
2. Few true diphthongs.
3. Agglomerations of consonants (but no aspirated consonants).

Grammar:—

4. A high degree of inflection in nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs, comparable to Latin in their complexity.

5. "Aspects" in verbs, a duality of forms presenting an action regarded as either completed or not, or else as single or habitual.

Sentence construction:—

6. Frequent inversion of sentence order, i.e. verb first and subject later, as in Spanish. In Slavonic, owing to the inflections, the word order is much more elastic and variable than in English, French, or German.

The Importance of Old Slavonic

The necessity of knowing Old Slavonic for acquiring a knowledge of the Slavonic group of languages is comparable to the need for knowing Latin for learning the Romance group. Old Slavonic is now a dead and purely ecclesiastical language, but its knowledge gives one an immense insight into, and understanding of, the reasons for the differences between the Slavonic languages. Hence it is very much worth while getting familiar with it, if one wishes to learn more than one language of the Slavonic group, or to study any of these languages at all seriously in its historical aspect, or again to study the group as a whole—a by no means impossible, even if exacting, task.

BIBLIOGRAPHY
(Aids to further study)

The following list is not intended to be an exhaustive bibliography of all the books written on every aspect of the Slavonic languages. In conformity with the introductory and descriptive character of this work, we give below under the headings for the separate languages a selected list of some of the best and most modern grammars, books on their orthography and phonetics, the easier historical grammars, and the most useful dictionaries for each language (in this order). Precedence is given to works in English, after which works in French and German follow—with works in the Slavonic languages themselves given last. This is done purely on the assumption that the English student will be, to start with, more at home in the West European languages, as is usually the case.

The author and title are given as in the original work except in the case of dictionaries, where the title is translated into English. The script of the author's name helps to indicate the origin of dictionaries published in the Slav countries and aiming primarily at assisting natives of those countries. Such works naturally do not contain all the information an English student needs, but can be very useful to him nevertheless.

For the sake of brevity we give preference to latest editions where advisable. We have excluded most works not completed at the time of our writing, and also very large works such as the average student would find inaccessible or beyond his means.

We conclude with a very brief list of the main works on the Slavonic languages as a group.

It will be seen that the student has at his command a very rich variety of aids, if works in the Slavonic languages are included.

RUSSIAN

B. O. UNBEGAUN. Russian Grammar. Oxford, 1957.

I. M. PULKINA. A Short Russian Reference Grammar. Moscow, 2nd ed. n.d.

W. HARRISON, Y. CLARKSON, S. LE FLEMING. Colloquial Russian. London, 1973.

BEN T. CLARK. Russian for Americans. New York-London, 1973.

G. STILMAN, L. STILMAN, W. E. HARKINS. Introductory Russian Grammar. New York, 1972.

G. A. BIRKETT. A Modern Russian Course. London, 1942.
A. H. SEMEONOFF. A New Russian Grammar. London, 1962.
N. FORBES. Russian Grammar. Oxford, 1914, 2nd edition 1916.
N. FORBES. Elementary Russian Grammar, revised by E. Hill. Oxford, 1943.
S. C. BOYANUS and N. B. JOPSON. Spoken Russian. London, 1939.
S. C. BOYANUS. A Manual of Russian Pronunciation. London, 1955.
D. JONES, D. WARD. The Phonetics of Russian. Cambridge, 1969.
М. И. МАТУСЕВИЧ. Современный русский язык—Фонетика. Москва, 1976.
Р. И. АВАНЕСОВ. Русское литературное произношение. Москва, 1972.
Л. Л. БУЛАНИН. Фонетика современного русского языка. Москва, 1972.
Е. А. БРЫЗГУНОВА. Звуки и интонация русской речи. (with records.) Москва, 1969.
Е. А. БРЫЗГУНОВА. Практическая фонетика и интонация русского языка. Москва, 1963.
М. В. ПАНОВ. Русская фонетика. Москва, 1967.
В. Г. КОСТОМАРОВ, В. И. ПОЛОВНИКОВА, Л. Н. ШВЕДОВА. Русский язык для иностранных студентов. Москва, 1974.
И. ПУЛЬКИНА, Е. ЗАХАВА-НЕКРАСОВА. Русский язык. Москва, n.d.
ed. Н. Ю. ШВЕДОВА. Грамматика современного русского литературного языка. Москва, 1970.
А. А. ШАХМАТОВ. Очерк современного русского литературного языка. Москва, 1941.
В. А. БОГОРОДИЦКИЙ. Общий курс русской грамматики. Москва-Ленинград, 1935.
Л. А. БУЛАХОВСКИЙ. Курс русского литературного языка. 1937.
Р. И. АВАНЕСОВ—В. Н. СИДОРОВ. Очерк грамматики русского литературного языка. 1937.
Л. В. ЩЕРБА. Грамматика русского языка. 7th edition, 1947.
A. BOGUSŁAWSKI, S. KAROLAK. Gramatyka rosyjska. Warszawa, 1973.
В. В. ВИНОГРАДОВ. Русский язык. Москва, 1947.
G. VINOKUR. La Langue russe, translated by Yves Millet. Paris, 1947.
Г. ВИНОКУР. Русский язык. Москва, 1945.
W. K. MATTHEWS. Russian Historical Grammar. London, 1960.
Н. ДУРНОВО. Введение в историю русского языка. 1927.
K. H. MEYER. Historische Grammatik der russischen Sprache, I. Bonn, 1933.

Л. А. БУЛАХОВСКИЙ. Исторический комментарий к литературному русскому языку. 1937.
В. В. ИВАНОВ. Историческая грамматика русского языка. Москва, 1964.
В. И. БОРКОВСКИЙ, П. С. КУЗНЕЦОВ. Историческая грамматика русского языка. Москва, 1965.
Р. И. АВАНЕСОВ. Очерки русской диалектологии, I. Москва, 1949.
Е. Ф. КАРСКИЙ. Русская диалектология. 1924.
П. С. КУЗНЕЦОВ. Русская диалектология. Москва, 1951.

Dictionaries

M. WHEELER. Russian-English Dictionary. Oxford, 1972.
И. Р. ГАЛЬПЕРИН. Большой англо-русский словарь, I,II. Москва, 1972.
*M. A. O'BRIEN. New English-Russian and Russian-English Dictionary. London, 1930.
V. MÜLLER and S. BOYANUS. Russian-English Dictionary. Moscow, 1937, and London, 1943.
В. К. МЮЛЛЕР. English-Russian Dictionary. Moscow, 1967.
А. И. СМИРНИЦКИЙ, О. С. АХМАНОВА and others. Russian-English Dictionary. Moscow, 1965.
L. SEGAL. Russian-English Dictionary. London, 1942.
L. SEGAL. English-Russian Dictionary. London, 1948.
*K. BLATTNER. Russian-German, German-Russian Dictionary. Langenscheidt, Berlin, 1929, and New York, 1945.
E. DAUM, W. SCHENK. A Dictionary of Russian Verbs. Leipzig, 1974.
С. И. ОЖЕГОВ. Словарь русского языка. Москва, 1972.
Р. И. АВАНЕСОВ, С. И. ОЖЕГОВ. Русское литературное произношение и ударение. Москва, 1959.
С. И. ОЖЕГОВ, А. Б. ШАПИРО. Орфографический словарь русского языка. Москва, 1959.
ed. Д. Э. РОЗЕНТАЛЬ. Слитно или раздельно? Москва, 1972.
ed. А. И. МОЛОТКОВ. Фразеологический словарь русского языка. Москва, 1967.
Д. Н. УШАКОВ (and others). Толковый словарь русского языка, 4 vols. Moscow, 1935-1940.
А. ПРЕОБРАЖЕНСКІЙ. Этимологическій словарь русскаго языка, 2 vols. (А-Сулея). Moscow, 1910-1916.
M. VASMER. Russisches etymologisches Wörterbuch. 3 vols. Heidelberg, 1953, 1955, 1958.

*With references to grammatical tables.

В. ДАЛЬ. Толковый словарь живого великорусскаго языка, 4 vols. 4th edition. St. Petersburg-Moscow, 1912. Photographic copy of 2nd edition of 1880-1882, 4 vols., Moscow, 1935.

UKRAINIAN

G. LUCKYJ, J. B. RUDNYCKYJ. A Modern Ukrainian Grammar. Winnipeg, 1967.
А. П. МЕДУШЕВСЬКИЙ, Р. Г. ЗЯТКОВСЬКА. Ukrainian Grammar. Київ, 1963.
М. А. ЖОВТОБРЮХ, Б. М. КУЛИК. Курс сучасної украинської літературної мови. 2 vols. Київ, 1965.
———. Сучасна українська літературна мова. Вступ. Фонетика. Київ, 1976.
Народний Комісаріат Освіти УРСР. Український правопис. Київ, 1961.
E. BORŠČAK. Lectures ukrainiennes, with grammar. Paris, 1946.
J. ZIŁYŃSKI. Opis fonetyczny języka ukraińskiego. Kraków, 1932.
J. B. RUDNYCKYJ. Ukrainian Language and its Dialects (in Ukrainian). Українська мова, її початки, історія й говори, 5th edition. Sydney-Canberra, 1978.

Dictionaries

М. Л. ПОДВЕЗЬКО, М. І. БАЛЛА. English-Ukrainian Dictionary. Kiev, 1974.
М. Л. ПОДВЕЗЬКО. Ukrainian-English Dictionary. Kiev, 1957.
В. С. ІЛЬЇН, and others. Ukrainian-Russian Dictionary. Kiev, 1965.
М. Л. ПОДВЕЗЬКО. English-Ukrainian Dictionary. Kiev, 1948.
Д. І. ГАНИЧ, І. С. ОЛІЙНИК. Russian-Ukrainian Dictionary. 2nd ed. Kiev, 1974.
І. К. БІЛОДІД, С. І. ГОЛОВАЩУК, et al. Russian-Ukrainian Dictionary. 3 vols. Kiev, 1968-1969.
М. Я. КАЛИНОВИЧ. Russian-Ukrainian Dictionary. Moscow, 1948.
Б. Д. ГРІНЧЕНКО. Ukrainian-Russian Dictionary, 2 vols. Kiev, 1907.
И. М. КИРИЧЕНКО, and others. Ukrainian-Russian Dictionary. 6 vols. Kiev, 1953-1963.
ed. С. І. ГОЛОВАЩУК, В. П. РУСАНІВСЬКИЙ. Орфографічний словник української мови. Київ, 1976.

ed. М. А. ЖОВТОБРЮХ. Українська літературна вимова і наголос. Київ, 1973.
М. І. ПОГРІБНИЙ. Словник наголосів української літературної мови. Київ, 1964.
C. H. ANDRUSYSHEN, J. N. KRETT. Ukrainian-English Dictionary. Toronto, 1957.

BYELORUSSIAN

PETER J. MAYO. A Grammar of Byelorussian. Sheffield, 1976.
А. КРИВИЦКИЙ, А. Е. МИХНЕВИЧ, А. И. ПОДЛУЖНЫЙ. Белорусский язык для небелоруссов. Минск, 1973.
Б. ТАРАШКЕВІЧ. Беларуская Граматыка для школ. 5th edition. Vilna (Вільня), 1929.
Р. АСТРОЎСКІ. Беларускі Правапіс. Vilna, 1930.
Я. КОЛАС, К. ГУРСКІ, Я. ШКЛЯР. Сінтаксіс беларускага языка. 1939.
К. К. АТРАХОВІЧ (КРАПІВА), М. Г. БУЛАХАЎ. Граматыка беларускай мовы. 2 vols. Мінск, 1962, 1966.

Dictionaries

М. і Г. ГАРЕЦКІЯ. Small Russian-Byelorussian and Byelorussian-Russian Dictionaries. 2 vols. Vilna, 1921.
В. ЛАСТОЎСКІ. Russian-Byelorussian Dictionary. Kaunas, 1924. Erratic.
С. НЕКРАШЕВІЧ—М. БАЙКОВ. Russian-Byelorussian Dictionary. 1928.
Б. ДРУЦКІ-ПАДБЯРЭСКІ. Byelorussian-Polish Dictionary. Vilna, 1929.
С. М. ГРАБЧИКОВ. Byelorussian-Russian Dictionary. Minsk, 1975.
К. К. КРАПІВА. Byelorussian-Russian Dictionary. Moscow, 1962.
Я. КОЛАС, К. КРАПІВА, П. ГЛЕБКА. Russian-Byelorussian Dictionary. Moscow, 1953.
А. Я. БАХАНЬКОЎ, І. М. ГАЙДУКЕВІЧ, П. П. ШУБА. Тлумачальны слоўнік беларускай мовы. Мінск, 1972.
М. П. ЛОБАН, М. Р. СУДНІК. Арфаграфічны слоўнік. Minsk, 1966.
А. І. ПАДЛУЖНЫ, В. М. ЧЭКМАН. Гукі беларускай мовы. Мінск, 1973.
ed. К. К. АТРАХОВІЧ. Тлумачальны слоўнік беларусуай мовы. Vol. 1, 1977 (А-В), vol. 2, 1978 (Г-К), Мінск.
ed. В. У. МАРТЫНАУ. Этымалагічны слоўнік беларускай мовы. Vol. 1, (А-Б), Мінск 1978.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

THE SLAVONIC GROUP

W. J. ENTWISTLE and W. A. MORISON. Russian and the Slavonic Languages. London, 1964.
A. MEILLET. Le slave commun. 2nd edition. Paris, 1934.
A. VAILLANT. Grammaire comparée des langues slaves, I. Lyon, vol. I, 1950; vol. II, 1958; vol. III, 1966.
W. VONDRÁK. Vergleichende slavische Grammatik. 2 vols. Göttingen, 1924, 1928.
V. HRUBÝ. Vergleichende Grammatik der slavischen Sprachen. Hartleben, Vienna-Leipzig. Sketchy and out of date.
А. М. СЕЛИЩЕВ. Славянское языкознание, I: Западнославянские языки. Москва, 1941.
Н. КОНДРАШОВ. Славянские языки. Москва, 1956.
С. Б. БЕРНШТЕЙН. Очерк сравнительной грамматики славянских языков. Москва, 1961.
K. HORÁLEK. Úvod do studia slovanských jazyků. Praha, 1962.
T. LEHR-SPŁAWIŃSKI, W. KURASZKIEWICZ, F. SŁAWSKI. Przegląd i charakterystyka języków slowiańskich. Warszawa, 1954.
ed. W. WEINGART. Slovanské spisovné jazyky v době přítomné. Praha, 1937.
R. NAHTIGAL. Slovanski jeziki, I. Ljubljana, 1952.
O. BROCH. Slavische Phonetik. Heidelberg, 1911.
ed. T. LEHR-SPŁAWIŃSKI. Chrestomatia slowiańska. I (South Slav). Kraków, 1949; II (West Slav). Kraków, 1950.
E. BERNEKER. Slavische Chrestomathie. Trübner, Strasburg, 1902.
E. BERNEKER. Slavisches etymologisches Wörterbuch (to "morŭ" only). Heidelberg, 1908-1914.
F. MIKLOSICH. Dictionnaire abrégé de six langues slaves. 1885. Reprinted.

The attention of students is also drawn to the articles on the Slavonic languages in the various encyclopedias and, for samples of the spoken language, to the various series of records available in Great Britain and elsewhere.

SECTION 1. RUSSIAN

INTRODUCTION

Russian, or more properly Great Russian, is by far the most widely known of the modern Slavonic languages and deservedly so. Its literature, which only matured in the nineteenth century after the development of the modern language, transcends mere national interest and touches upon the widest fields of universal experience and the most profound problems of the human soul. One can safely say that the fine traditions of the nineteenth century, which produced so great a literature under difficult circumstances, are being maintained under the Soviet regime today, where the Russian book, be it classical or modern, is more widely read than ever before since the vast spread of education was started. And the great new experiments in living and organization carried out in the U.S.S.R. in recent years give an additional fillip to the interest in the language of so brilliant and vital a people. Russian poetry, too, whose appeal is naturally almost limited to those who understand and appreciate the language, is undoubtedly comparable to the greatest in Europe, for in its great range and variety both in subject and in pure musicality it offers gems and flowers of human expression of supreme beauty and the widest appeal.

On the very subjective subject of the pleasingness of the mere sound of the language, I cannot do better than modestly (and gratefully) quote the opinion of a British scholar. Professor N.B. Jopson, the notable philologist and linguist, thus expressed himself at a lecture at London University in March, 1937, on the subject of the pleasing sound of Russian to the British listener:—

> "Whether it is the wealth of the Russian vocabulary that attention is focussed on, or the nobility of expression and the harmony of the language, it is generally recognized that Russian can hold its own in the fairest company. Those who belong to the *profanum vulgus*, to whom the Cyrillic alphabet, however attractive it may be to the eye, is a mystery, cannot of course be expected to feel the greatness of the language. It is nevertheless a matter of common experience that a person completely ignorant of Russian, who for the first time hears the language spoken by a native, will involuntarily exclaim: 'Why, how melodious Russian sounds—I always thought it was so hard,

nothing else but a succession of long syllables, of unpronounceable words.' Nothing is falser than so unflattering a judgment, for once a learner has sufficiently overcome the difficulties of the language to be able to understand it when spoken, and to appreciate, dimly perhaps, but still appreciate, the written word of the great writers, his admiration increases till he is unrestrainedly ready to subscribe to the touching and famous words of one of Russia's noblest writers:-

"Во дни сомнений, во дни тя́гостных раздýмий о судьбáх мое́й рóдины, - ты оди́н мне подде́ржка и опóра, о вели́кий, могýчий, правди́вый и свобóдный рýсский язы́к. Не будь тебя́ - как не впасть в отчáяние, при ви́де всегó что совершáется дóма? Но нельзя́ ве́рить, чтобы такóй язы́к не́ был дан вели́кому нарóду."

(Турге́нев.)

Translation:-

"In days of doubt, in days of painful reflection on the fate of my country, you alone give succour and support to me, o great, mighty, truthful and free Russian tongue. Were it not for you, how should one not fall into despair when seeing all that is taking place at home? But it is impossible to believe that such a language was not given to a great people."

These indeed were words written in difficult days - prophetic too, for the heroic resistance of the Russian people in the titanic struggle during the second world war has proved their title to greatness.

Professor Jopson then went on to discuss the reasons for his opinion. He pointed out that pleasingness is a subjective matter, and in this case is largely dependent on the similarity of Russian to English, for to the speaker of a language his own language, when well pronounced, cannot seem ugly. There were three main points of similarity: 1. the strong stress accent common to these two distant cousins; 2. the fact that there are few sounds in Russian unfamiliar to the English ear; 3. and also that both languages tolerate considerable agglomerations of consonants in their words. Later in the lecture, Professor Jopson, when discussing the differences between the two languages, expressed an opinion with which I, who have been accustomed to hearing English around me since the age of nine,

cannot agree. He said: "Characteristic of Russian, and, unfortunately perhaps, absent from English, is a peculiarly harmonious and sonorous vowel system." In my opinion, well-spoken English can be equally pleasing and dignified just on the score of its vowel sounds, for it is comparatively poor in its variety of consonants. The second main differentiating feature which Professor Jopson pointed out was the range of palatalized consonants in Russian, almost totally absent from ordinary English. These, he said, were "not unpleasant to our ears" and "relieve what might otherwise seem to be a harshness, a boominess, in Russian speech." And, indeed, these subtle varieties of sound give to Russian what is to many of us one of its peculiar charms.

So much for the attractions of the Russian language, its literature and the life it reflects. British students of it should always bear in mind that it has now become the common language of a great multi-national state, and the means of the spread of civilization to many obscure peoples who hardly more than sixty years ago had no written language at all.

Geographically speaking, Russian is spoken in Europe to the north and east of Byelorussia and the Ukraine in the greater part of the forest and plain regions of that area, and extends through the areas of other indigenous languages across Siberia to the Pacific Ocean. Towards Byelorussia and the Ukraine, Russian can be heard in many transitional dialects and variations. The words of folk songs from various districts and the description of Russian dialects in Dal's dictionary bear witness to this as regards the conditions obtaining during the last century, and despite modern movements of population and the influence of the wireless, etc., evidence of such transitions would hardly be disputed today.

Few monuments remain of the early form of the Russian language. It is partially preserved in early versions of laws and treaties and other documents (the so-called грáмоты) and to a lesser extent in the chronicles (ле́тописи), unless we accept the authenticity of the "Lay of the host of Ígor" (Слóво о полкý Йгореве), which is a unique monument in the epic style commemorating a disastrous campaign by Prince Ígor against the Pólovtsy in 1185 A.D. The text of this, however, must have been copied and recopied many times before the version, from which it was first printed in 1800, came into existence. Гýдзий suggests that the original dates from the early XVIc.

In contrast to this work, one can compare the elevated vocabulary and style of Metropolitan

Ilarion's eulogistic sermon entitled "Слово о законѣ и благодати" dating from the first half of the XIc. (1037-50). The language is strongly influenced in vocabulary, grammar and syntax by Church Slavonic. In beautiful rhetorical periods Ilarion praises the Russian Prince Vladímir who brought Christianity to Russia (Kievan Русь) in the 980's AD (982 or 984). His language is typical of the ecclesiastical literary language of Russia of the earliest period, i.e. XIc.:

> "Вся страны, и грады, и людіе чтутъ и славятъ коегождо ихъ учителя, иже научиша православной Вѣрѣ. Похвалимъ же и мы, по силѣ нашей, малыми похвалами -- великаа и дивнаа сътворшаго нашего учителя и наставника, великаго Кагана нашеа земля, Владимера, внука стараго Игоря, сына же славнаго Святослава, иже, въ своа лѣта владычьствующа, мужствомъ же и храбъръствомъ прослуша въ странахъ многахъ, и побѣдами и крѣпостію поминаются нынѣ и словутъ. Не въ худѣ бо и не въ невѣдоми земли владычьствовашя, но въ Русской, яже вѣдома и слышима есть всѣми концы земля...
>
> Встани, о честнаа главо, отъ гроба твоего, встани, отряси сонъ! Нѣси бо умерлъ, но спиши до общаго всѣмъ встанiа. Встани, нѣси умерлъ, нѣсть бо ти лѣпо умрети, въровавшу въ Христа, живота всему мiру. Отряси сонъ, взведи очи..."

This style was used for hagiography (the lives of the Saints), eulogies of princes, descriptions of pilgrimages, sermons and so on for about four centuries. Here and there, in passages of a less elevated nature, in self-deprecatory asides and apologies, as in "The Pilgrimage of the Abbot Daniel" (to the Holy Land) (Хожде́ние игу́мена Дании́ла), a more colloquial, Russian idiom reveals itself, a more personal style, doubtless nearer to the spoken language of the writer. There are many famous "monuments" from this period, such as the Поуче́ние Влади́мира Мономáха (which occurs in the chronicles), Сказáние о Бори́се и Глéбе, Молéние Дании́ла Затóчника, etc.

After the fall of Constantinople in 1353 many scholars from Greece and the Balkans fled to safety in Russia. This led to a renewed wave of Church Slavonic influence, and a return to an orthography, a grammar and style of language, which was being gradually abandoned previously.

It was not until the XV and particularly the XVI centuries that the Russian element in the language really started to prevail and the Church Slavonic grammatical system began to break down.

In the "Journey of Afanásij Nikítin to India" (Хожде́ние Афанáсия Ники́тина за три мóря), 1466-1472, we get many samples of the personal language and views of an enterprising merchant of the city Tver', as well as a very interesting description of his journey and experiences in XVc. India, full of quotations in various Oriental languages, Old Uzbek (Chagatay), Arabic and Persian.

In the "Zadónščina" dating from the early XVc., we see the clear influence of the early Russian epics (The "Slóvo"). This work is a tribute to the Muscovite Prince Dmítri Ivánovič and his victory over the Tatars who were under the command of Mamáy at Kulíkovo in 1380.

In the XVIc., in the famous correspondence between Iván the Dread and Prince Kúrbsky, who deserted to the West (Poland), we already see clearly the breakdown of the Church Slavonic influences in the literary language. The czar has already lost the feeling for the use of the old past tenses, Aorist and Imperfect, and obviously misuses them in mighty, rolling periods, impressive but difficult to read. Prince Kúrbsky's style shows better syntax and choice of language and is more polished.

Equally enlightening is the language of the "Домострóй", edited by the priest Silvester. This work is really a handbook on all aspects of running a household, administration, education and even cooking, and is not "literature". But as it deals with day-to-day life and domestic subjects, it is valuable for its revelation of the spoken language of Muscovy in the XVIc., as well as for its revealing views on a tough education, a strict supervision of servants, a cultivation of 'mind-your-own-business' and uncommunicativeness and its description of the preparation of many tasty dishes, -- all amusing to read.

In the XVII century the first clear influence of the West (Poland *via* the Ukraine) is revealed in the Ви́рши and Comedies of Simeón Pólotskiy; while in the autobiography of the persecuted Protopóp Avvakúm we find a variety of styles according to the subject with which he is dealing. Church Slavonic influence is paramount only in his most elevated passages, while the descriptions of his misfortunes during his banishment (with his wife) in Siberia and his sufferings at the hands of his tormentor, Пашкóв, are in a very vivid, colloquial language.

It was in the XVIII century that the first conscious efforts were made in Russia to abandon the Church Slavonic tradition. Church Slavonic had by then become more or less unintelligible and certainly foreign, even to educated people, let alone to the masses in Russia. Peter the Great himself at the beginning of the century not only reformed the alphabet, as already mentioned, but actively cultivated and advocated a concise, direct and businesslike style of writing, as his surviving letters reveal:

КЪ КНЯЗЮ АНИКИТѢ ИВАНОВИЧУ РЕПНИНУ

Herr.

Сегодня получилъ я вѣдомость о Вашемъ толь худомъ поступкѣ, за чьто можешь шеею запълатить, ібо я чрезъ господина губернатора подъ смертью не велѣлъ ничего в Ригу пропускать. Но ты пишешь, что Огилвиі тебѣ велѣлъ. Но я так пишу: хотя бъ і ангелъ, не точию сей дерзновенникъ і досадитель велѣлъ бы, но тебѣ не довълѣло бы сего чинить. Впреть же аше единая щепа пройдетъ, ей Богомъ кленусь, безъ головы будешь.

Piter.

С Москъвы, маія в 19 д. 1705.

Various writers, such as the poets (Prince) Kantemír, (Count) Sumarókov, and Trediakóvskiy, made more or less conscious efforts to reform the literary language under Western influence. But it was not until the middle of the XVIIIc. that Mikhaíl Lomonósov, who had studied in Germany and was a scientist as well as a linguist and writer, produced his Grammar of the Russian language (Россійская Грамматика, 1755) and clearly laid down the norms for the literary (and spoken) language of educated Russians. He advocated the adoption of the Moscow dialect, with its characteristic pronunciation of the unstressed o as a, as the standard of pronunciation for literary Russian. He admitted many forms (e.g. the endings -ый, -ущий) which were straight borrowings from Church Slavonic, as well as a certain amount of Church Slavonic vocabulary. He also laid down the famous "Doctrine of the Three Styles," by which--for odes, sermons and other elevated literature a language with a large Church Slavonic element was to be used, while for personal correspondence, 'low comedies' and satire this element was to be definitely eschewed and eliminated. Lyric poetry, and literary and scientific descriptions were to be written in a

'middle' style with sparing use of Church Slavonic elements, and it was this *middle* style, which finally gave birth to the modern literary language.

Later in the century Derzhávin used it in his poetry, and Karamzín used it for his 'History of Russia' and sentimental novels (such as Бéдная Лúза) written strongly under the influence of W. Europe, particularly France as far as the language is concerned.

The final 'crystalliser' of modern Russian is without any doubt Alexander Púshkin, who died in 1837 and wrote prose ("Капитáнская дочь"), as well as poetry in a great variety of styles: lyrics, нарóдные "скáзки" (folk tales in verse), Евгéний Онéгин (a novel in verse), Борúс Годунóв (a historical play, on the model of Shakespeare), etc. His language, although it is not absolutely modern (quite naturally), can be read without difficulty by Russians today. And he can speak to us direct, without any feeling of a barrier of style or intervening time which could make him foreign to our spirits and minds.

The XIXc. produced geniuses of world stature in Russia, whose names we all know: Gógol', Lérmontov, Tyútchev, Fet, Dostoyévskiy, Tolstóy, Turgénev, Chékhov, for all of whom the Russian language presented no problem. It had become one with the people, no longer reserved for an inner coterie of aristocrats or clergy. It had become the instrument to express great, humanistic ideas which were to become the property and heritage of the whole world. Russian literature, more than that of any other Slavonic nation, is remarkable for the breadth and universality of its ideas, and it is this, above all, that has won for it and for the Russian language the recognition of the whole civilized world.

In historical times the earliest foreign influences were undoubtedly from the Greek of Byzantium through the strong cultural influence of the Orthodox Church and from Old Church Slavonic which was the liturgical language of this Church in Russia from earliest times. After the fall of Kiev to the Tatars in 1240 and during the two hundred and fifty or so years of the 'Tatar yoke' the influence of Tatar and other Asian languages was predominant and gave to Russian a new non-Slavonic vocabulary in many fields, such as government, weaponry, military life, clothing, and even domestic life. For example, the Russian word for horse, лошадь, is from the Tatar *alaša*. Much later, in the XVIIc. the influence of Western Europe began to be felt in the language--at first from Poland via the Ukraine, and under the influence

of the reforms of Peter the Great at the beginning of the XVIIIc., directly from German, Dutch, English and French. By the end of XVIIIc. French influence was predominant and the French language was spoken in the families of the Russian upper class well into the XIXc. The influence of English only started during the XIXc. and English has been the main source of loan words, especially in recent times. Despite all these influences during the course of its history, Russian remains a predominantly Slavonic language of the Eastern sub-group, clearly related to the other members of the Slavonic family of languages. These in their turn have often been influenced by Russian. Russian is now the *lingua franca* of the vast multinational Soviet State and has become one of the official languages of the United Nations, thus attaining the status of one of the main media of communication in the world today. Its importance is matched by the beauty and human significance of its literature, especially in the fields of poetry, drama and the novel.

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET

The present Russian alphabet, called гражда́нка, was introduced in Russia in 1708, and slightly modified by decree in 1917-18.

Russian		*Approximate English Equivalent.*
А	а	(more open and forward than) *ah*
Б	б	*b*
В	в	*v*
Г	г	*g* in "go"
Д	д	*d*
Е	е	*ye* in "yes"; before soft consonants like *é* in French "été".
Ё	ё	*yo* in "yonder"
Ж	ж	*zh*, *s* in "pleasure"
З	з	*z*
И	и	*ee* in "meet"
Й	й	*y* in "boy"
К	к	*k*
Л	л	*l* in both "leaf" and "table"
М	м	*m*
Н	н	*n*
О	о	*o* in "for"
П	п	*p*
Р	р	*r* rolled
С	с	*s* in "see"
Т	т	*t*

Russian		*Approximate English Equivalent.*
У	у	*oo* in "boot"
Ф	ф	*f*
Х	х	*ch* in "loch"
Ц	ц	*ts* pronounced together
Ч	ч	*ch* in "cheese"
Ш	ш	*sh*
Щ	щ	*shch* in "Ashchurch" or a long soft *sh*
	ъ (or ')	*y* in "yet" before a vowel medially
	ы	*i* in "bit" with the tip of the tongue farther back
	ь	sign of palatalization or "softness"; medially before a vowel—*y* in "yet"
Э	э	approximately like *ea* in "ear" or before a soft syllable *a* in "ape"
Ю	ю	*u* in "tune"' "you"
Я	я	*yah*

The decree of 1917-8 abolished i, the equivalent of и, ѣ—the equivalent of e, ѳ—the equivalent of ф, and final mute ъ, and ѵ fell out of use. These letters were orthographical relics from the Old Slavonic alphabet.

Students of Old Slavonic will also note the absence of:—

s, ѣ, ѡ, ѩ, ѥ, ѧ, ѫ, ѭ, ѯ, ѯ, ѱ.

as well as the addition of:—

е, й, э, я,

and the use of у for оу, and щ for ѿ.

е is used throughout for ѥ, that is *e* as in "bet" with the preceding consonant palatalized or "soft."

PRONUNCIATION

The *Accent* in Russian is a strong, purely stress accent which can fall on any syllable of a word and may shift from one syllable to another in the course of declension or conjugation, e.g. вре́мя (= time), Nom. Plur. времена́; хожу́ (= I go), 3rd sing. хо́дит, 3rd plur. хо́дят.

All *Consonants* in Russian can be pronounced

"hard" or without palatalization (i.e. "ordinary," approximately as in English), or alternatively "soft" or with palatalization[1] when this is indicated by the letter ь following, or by a subsequent "palatalizing" vowel, that is, by я, е, и, ё or ю, with the important exception of the consonants ц, ж, and ш, now always hard in Russian, and ч and щ now always palatalized or "soft,"[2] e.g.:—

мат	= checkmate	мать	= mother
пел	= sang	трель	= trill
ва́за	= vase	ви́за	= visa
как	= how	кит	= whale
ос	= of wasps	ось	= axle
мор	= plague	море	= sea.

Initially these soft vowels, except и, are pronounced with a full *j* (yot) sound preceding. и used to be pronounced *ji* only in the cases of the 3rd person pronoun: им, их, и́ми. Parallel to the palatalizing vowels there exists the series of corresponding ordinary, non-palatalizing vowels, viz.:—а, э, ы, о and у as in the words: да (= yes), э́тот (= this), мы (= we), кот (= tom-cat), ум (= mind).

а and у are pronounced rather like *a* and *u* respectively in Italian or German.

э under stress before a hard consonant really sounds like English "ear," but before a soft consonant it is a very close *e*, like the first e in German "sehen" (so also *e* interpalatally), e.g. э́ти, 'et̪ɪ (= these) as opposed to э́тот, 'ɛ•tət (= this, masc.).

ы, written ɨ in phonetic script, could be described roughly as a centralized ɪ pronounced by

[1]Palatalization means the pronunciation of a sound with the addition of palatal resonance, obtained by approaching the end of the tongue to the front of the roof of the mouth or palate. This narrows the passage used for articulation and gives that peculiar "soft" or high-pitched quality. Neighbouring vowels are modified, i.e. closed or "narrowed down" to harmonize. There are really no "soft" *vowels*.

[2]One would expect that after hard ц, ж, and ш no palatalizing vowel would be written and correspondingly that after soft ч and щ no ordinary vowel would be written. However, я and ю are not written after any of these five consonants, though heard after the palatal ч and щ. Similarly, э and ы are not written after any of them, though in this case, of course, ы is heard after the hard ц, ж, and ш when и is written, e.g. цирк (= circus). Also, э does not occur after ц, and о is not written after щ, though they are heard, as in центр (= centre), ещё (= still).

raising the tongue high towards the *middle* of the palate.

о under stress is preceded by a slight *w* or lip-rounding.

Diphthongs with й can be formed with all the above vowels except the [ɛ]sound of э́тот and пел, e.g.: дай (= give!), пей (= drink!), кий (= cue), бой (= battle), дуй (= blow!), ми́лый (= dear), землёй (= with earth), негодя́й (= scoundrel), дюйм (= inch).

From the above it can be inferred that the Russian spelling makes a fair bid to be phonetic and at the same time reflects the close interdependence of consonant resonance and vowel quality. The Cyrillic alphabet as originally applied to Old Slavonic was doubtless more exact and successful, and with the phonetic and regional developments of Russian, deviations and changes were bound to occur. One of the most important factors for these deviations from true phonetic representation came to be the fact that unstressed vowels became modified and less clear, the word-stress itself shifting and not being fixed.

Modification of Unstressed Vowels (âkanie, îkanie)

All vowels and also diphthongs in unstressed syllables, and even unemphasized words such as не (= not), are modified or "toned down." English has a similar process, such as can be heard in the Southern English pronunciation of "*c*ontaminat*i*on," "*a*bout," "gentlem*a*n."

Unstressed у and ы preserve their essential quality, as in уха́ (= fish soup), во́ды (= waters), уйди́ (= go away!), до́брый (= kind). But unstressed а and о are both pronounced "*a*" (phonetic ʌ) in the pretonic syllable, as in мосто́в (= of bridges), сады́ (= gardens), война́ (= war), but in all other positions are both reduced to the neutral vowel, rendered in phonetics э, e.g. э́*т*от (= this), х*о*рошо́ (= good), лош*а*дь (= horse), з*а*ходи́ть (= go round, set), о́бл*а*ко (= cloud), ку́ш*а*йте (= eat!), ма́л*о*й (= small, Gen. fem. sing.).

Unstressed э is pronounced ɪ or like *i* in Eng. "bit," e.g. электри́чество (= electricity), аэропла́н (= aeroplane), эне́ргия (= energy). After ч, а is also reduced to ɪ when not stressed, e.g. часы́ tʃɪ'sɨ (= watch).

Similarly the palatalizing or "soft" vowels е, и, and even я non-finally are reduced to ɪ with the preceding consonant palatalized, in *all* unstressed syllables, e.g. зима́ (= winter), везде́ (= everywhere) си́ний (= blue), кла́дей (= of loads), язы́к (= tongue).

But finally я is reduced to the neutral vowel ə with the preceding consonant palatalized: Ва́ня 'vaṇə (Johnny). Ё, ё, and ёй never occur in unstressed syllables in literary Russian. Unstressed ю can also be reduced to ɪ, as in си́нюю 'siṇɪju (= blue, Acc. Sing. fem.).

The rebirth in Russian of the neutral vowel, still totally absent from standard Ukrainian, Polish, Czech, Slovak, Serbocroätian and literary Macedonian, is an interesting parallel to the vowel system of Old Slavonic. Originally the letter ъ was invented expressly to represent this sound which subsequently became mute. It is also known to Slovenian and modern Bulgarian in which it can occur even under stress.

RUSSIAN DIALECTS

Russian dialects are divided into three main groups: the Northern, the Southern, and the Central. The Central dialects are a blend of the Northern and Southern dialects in various proportions and are relatively recently formed. They stretch in a narrow belt between the territories of the Northern and Southern dialects, running from north-west to south-east across European Russia. Their territory extends from Pskov to round Kalínin and Moscow, a little north of Ryazáń to Pénza and just short of Sarátov on the Volga. To the north-east of this area and over most of Russian-speaking Siberia lies the territory of the Northern dialects. The Southern dialects stretch south-west of the Central region up to the boundaries of the Byelorussian and Ukrainian-speaking areas, but starting in the north only just south of Rzhev. That means that north-west of this point up to Pskov the Central dialects border directly on Byelorussian territory and by some are here classified as a separate subdivision of the Central region. South of Bryansk and north of it up to near Rzhev there is also another transitional region—between the Byelorussian and the Southern Russian dialect areas. In the south-east the Southern Russian dialect area borders on the Kazakh and Kalmyk territories round the lower Volga and reaches in a narrow tongue to the Caucasus south of Stavrópol' and Dzaudžikau on the Terek.

The main features peculiar to *Northern Russian dialects* are:—

1. Absence of *akanie*, i.e. the distinguishing of o and a in unstressed position—pretonically in *all* sub-dialects, e.g.:—

вода́ = water, pron. vo'da
трава́ = grass, " tra'va

2. The distinguishing of pretonic я, e derived from e, and e derived from ѣ, or partially doing so, or else pronouncing them all as 'e, e.g.:—

тяну́ = I pull несу́ = I carry
в лесу́ (<лѣсу) = in the wood река́ (<рѣка) = river

pron.	ṭa'nu	ṇo'su	v ḷe'su	
or pron.	ṭa'nu	ṇo'su		ṛo'ka
"	ṭa'nu	ṇe'su		ṛe'ka
"	ṭe'nu	ṇo'su		ṛe'ka
"	ṭe'nu	ṇo'su		ṛo'ka
"	ṭe'nu	ṇe'su		ṛe'ka (with 'e throughout)

It will be observed that in some cases we thus have unstressed ё, a feature unknown in literary Russian.

3. Plosive г, e.g.:—

гром = thunder, pron. grom
гора́ = hill, " go'ra

4. Loss of intervocalic *j* and subsequent vowel contractions e.g.:—

зна́ет pron. знаэт > знаат > знат = he knows

уме́т	for	уме́ет	= he knows how to
мот	"	мо́ет	= he washes
ду́мут	"	ду́мают	= they think
ста́ра	"	ста́рая	= old

5. Acc./Gen. sing. of Reflexive and Personal Pronouns in -я, e.g.:—

себя́ = self
меня́ = me
тебя́ = you (sg.)

6. Hard final -т in 3rd pers. sing. and plur. Present, e.g.:—

несёт = he carries
веду́т = they lead

The following features are common to the *majority* of North Russian subdialects:—

7. Stressed interpalatal 'a (я) become 'e, e.g.:—

грязь = dirt, pron. грезь, but гря́зный = dirty, pron. with я.
опе́ть = again, for опя́ть

8. Confusion of ц and ч, pronouncing *both* either as ц, or as a soft ц, or else as Polish *chuintante ć* [ʧ] , or again as ч [ʧ], e.g.: in у́лица (=street), хочу́ (=I want).

9. Use of the sound f (ф), e.g.:—

сарафа́н = sarafan
фунт = pound
торф = peat

10. Simplification of -дн- to long н, e.g.:—

о̄н̄о́ for одно́ = one (neut.)

11. Simplification of -бм- to long м, e.g.:—

о̄м̄а́н for обма́н = deceit

12. Changing вн- to мн-, e.g.:—

мнук for внук = grandson
дамно́ for давно́ = long ago

13. Soft -с-, in the endings -ск-, -ств-, e.g.:—

ру́ськой = Russian
бога́сьво = riches, for бога́тство

14. Instr. plur. ending -м for literary Russian -ми, thus confusing Dat. with Instr. plur., e.g.:—

свои́м глаза́м ви́дел = he saw it with his own eyes, for свои́ми глаза́ми...

Forms in -мы, -ма and -мя are also used. The last two for Dat. plur. as well.

15. Velar stem verbs of Class I (see under "The Conjugation of Verbs—Voices and Tenses" in "Morphology") have Infin. in -(к)чи, e.g.:—

пе(к)чи́ = to bake
мо(к)чи́ = to be able

16. Postpositive article, as in Bulgarian and Macedonian, but declinable, e.g.:—

до́м-от = the house
изба́та = the cottage, Acc. избу́ту, Acc. pl. и́збыте
сёло́то = the village

Some Northern dialects have Comparative adverbs in -яе, e.g.:—

скоря́е = quicker

The Northern dialects also have peculiarities of accent, syntax and vocabulary.

The *Southern Russian dialects* have the following pecularities not known to the Northern group, while in other respects, such as in the instances above, Nos. 7-16 (except No. 9), they agree with literary Russian:—

1. *akanie*, i.e. pronouncing unstressed a and o both as various shades of a, e.g.:

va'da for вода́ (= water), like tra'va for **трава́** (= grass)

2. *jakanie* or *ikanie*, i.e. not distinguishing **я** and e when unstressed and pronouncing both either **as** я or as и; in some subdialects the choice depends **on** the surrounding consonants. The usage varies **in the** various subdialects:—

весна́ = spring, pron. вясна́ or висна́

e.g. with dissimilative *jakanie*:—

Gen. sg. весны́ pron. вясны́
Dat. sg. весне́ pron. висне́ (Nom. sing. **висна́**)

3. Fricative г, phon. ɣ or ɦ, e.g.:—

ɣrom for гром = thunder
ɣa'ra for гора́ = hill

4. Acc./Gen. sg. of Reflexive and Personal Pronouns in -е, e.g.:—

себе́ = self, (pron. сябе́ or сибе́)
мене́ = me
тебе́ = you (sing.)

5. Soft final -ть in 3rd pers. sing. and plur. Present, e.g.:—

несе́ть = he carries
вяду́ть = they lead

6. Substitution of х or хв for ф, e.g.:—

сарахва́н = sarafan, pron. sərа'xfan
хвунт = pound
торх = peat

7. Some Southern dialects change final в and л to u̯, e.g.:—

давно́ = long ago, pron. dau̯'no
был = was, pron. bɨu̯

8. Soft pronunciation of к after soft consonants and j (й), e.g.:—

бо́чкя = barrel, for бо́чка
ча́йкю = gull, Acc. sing., for ча́йку

9. Hard pronunciation of щ, жд as hard long ш and ж respectively, e.g.:—

ш̄у́ка for щу́ка = pike
дажа̄́ for дождя́ = rain, Gen. sing.

10. Loc. sing. in -у for masc. nouns with fixed accent and for some neuters, e.g.:—

на концу́ = on the end
у по́лю = in the field

11. Instr. sing. in -уй or -юй for soft fem. i-stems, e.g.:—

но́чуй or но́чьюй = by night, for но́чью

also in -ай, e.g.:—

но́чай

12. Nom. plur. in -а or -я for fem. nouns, e.g.:—

степа́ or степя́ = steppes
деревня́ = villages

13. Acc. sing. fem. of adjectives—in -у́я or, if unstressed, -аю, and for soft stems in -ию, e.g.:—

плаху́я = bad
ста́раю = old
си́нию = blue

14. Gen./Acc. sing. fem. of pronouns, with final -е́, e.g.:—

е́е = her, ма́е = my

15. Stressed е not changed to ё in 2nd, 3rd pers. sing. and 1st and 2nd pers. plur. Present of verbs, e.g.:—

несе́ш = you carry (sing.)
несе́те = you carry (plur.)

The Southern dialects also have peculiarities of accent.

Some Southern dialects have lost the neuter gender; one hears:—

моя́ ведро́ for моё ведро́ = my pail
све́жей ма́слы " све́жее ма́сло = fresh butter

Some Southern dialects have also lost the short, predicative form of the adjectives.

Some *Central* dialects have soft т, д for soft к, г respectively, e.g.:—

ру́ти for ру́ки = hands
но́ди " но́ги = legs

The Northern and Southern dialect regions are further subdivided thus:—

The Northern dialect falls into five main sub-dialects:

1. The Far Northern sub-dialects spoken round the White Sea and the Lower Pechóra river.
2. The Olonéts sub-dialect, spoken east of Lake Onéga.
3. The Western sub-dialect, spoken round Leningrad and Nóvgorod.
4. The Eastern sub-dialect, spoken in N.E. Russia, Vólogda, Kírov, etc.
5. The South-Eastern Vladímir-Volga sub-dialect, stretching from north of Kalínin and Yaroslávl' to Urál'sk and Chkálov.

The Southern dialect has three sub-divisions—

1. Dialects with dissimilative *jakanie*, spoken round Orël and Kursk and on the Don and in the "tongue" reaching to the Caucasus.
2. Dialects with moderate *jakanie*, spoken round Kalúga and Túla.
3. Dialects with strong *jakanie*, spoken round Ryazáń, Tambóv, Voróneżh, and south-east of them up to Volgograd and also round Kúibyshev.

It is important to note that modern literary Russian is founded on the speech of Moscow which lies in the Central, "compromise" region and uses Southern Russian vowels (i.e. with *akanie*, pronouncing unstressed o as various kinds of a, and also *ikanie*), but Northern Russian consonants, e.g. plosive g (e.g. ropa pronounced ga'ra) and f. Literary Russian is, therefore, a suitable unifying medium for all Russian speaking areas. The Moscow pronunciation has long been copied in all other Russian cultural centres, including Leningrad. But in some ways Leningrad pronunciation is nearer the spelling, e.g.:—

ру́сский	Moscow pron.	'ruskəj
	Leningrad pron.	'ruskij
коне́чно	Moscow pron.	ka'nɛʃnə
	Leningrad pron.	ka'neʧnə,

etc.

It has been proved that in older times Moscow lay in the region of the Northern *okanie*, not of the Southern *akanie*.

VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING

In common with Old Slavonic, which is "an elder sister" to the modern Slavonic languages rather than a parent language, Russian has preserved certain Indo-European features, viz. vowel gradation or Ablaut, to be seen in the examples:

умере́ть	= to die, Pfve.	умру́ (Fut.)	= I shall die
		умори́ть	= to do to death
дохну́ть	= to breathe Pfve.	дух	= spirit
течёт	= flows	ток	= current

and vowel lengthening, as for example in:—

говори́ть	= to speak	разгова́ривать	= to converse
собра́ть (from собьрати)	= to collect Pfve.	собира́ть	= to collect Impfve.
умру́	= I shall die Pfve.	умира́ть	= to die Impfve.
посла́ть (from -сълати)	= to send Pfve.	посыла́ть	= to send Impfve.

SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS

Most of the features pointed out as characteristically Slavonic in the chapter on Old Slavonic (Volume 1) are also typical of Russian, namely:—

1. Methathesis: Gothic *valdan*, Russian власть (=power), владе́ть (= to rule) (these are really Church Slavonic *loan words*), the true Russian form having a vowel both before and after the л[1], e.g. во́лость (= small district). Cf. сторона́ = side, страна́ = a country; голова́ = head, глава́ = chapter.

Initially the methathesis is identical with Old Slavonic when the intonation was originally rising, e.g.: Germ. *Arbeit*, Russian рабо́та (= work); ра́ло (= plough), from *ȏrdło*. But when the intonation was originally falling, the vowel remains o in Russian, e.g. ло́коть (= elbow), Serbcr. ла̏кат, from ȏlkъть.

2. The 1st Palatalization: к, г, ч change to ч, ж, ш respectively, e.g.:—

пеку́ = I bake печёт = he bakes

[1] This is called полногла́сие or pleophony, See p.50, No. 3.

берегу́ = I keep бережёт = he keeps
страх = terror стра́шный = terrible

ц and з, when originating from k and g respectively, change to ч and ж before syllables originally starting with front vowels:—

ме́сяц = month ме́сячный = monthly
князь = prince кня́жество = principality
княжна́ = princess

(The 2nd Palatalization has been lost in flexion in Russian, and also in Slovak and Slovenian.)

3. The influence of the *j* element ("yotation"):—

к, г, х changing to ч, ж, ш:—
пла́кать, пла́чу = weep (Infin., Present 1st. p.s.); маха́ть, машу́ = wave; дви́гать, дви́жу (less common than дви́гаю) = move

т, д changing to ч, ж:—
хвати́ть, хвачу́ = seize ви́деть, ви́жу = see

с, з changing to ш, ж:—
писа́ть, пишу́ = write вяза́ть, вя́жу = bind

н, л, р become palatalized:—
гнать, гоню́ = chase моло́ть, мелю́ = grind
ора́ть, орю́ = plough

п, б, в, м add л palatalized:—
топи́ть, топлю́ = heat, drown
гра́бить, гра́блю = pillage
поста́вить, поста́влю = put
корми́ть, кормлю́ = feed

ст, зд change to щ, зж:—
возвести́ть, возвещу́ = announce
пригвозди́ть, пригвозжу́ = nail to

ск, зг change to щ, зж:—
иска́ть, ищу́ = seek
визг : визжа́ть, визжу́ = squeal
бры́згать, бры́зжу = splash

In Russian ч represents a coalescence of both т + *j* and к + *j*, e.g.:—

мета́ть, мечу́ = cast
пла́кать, пла́чу = weep

4. Disappearance of consonants, as in O.S.:
со(п)н = sleep
уто(п)ну́ть = to drown

5. Epenthetic *n*:—

внима́ть = to listen to
приня́ть = to accept
but:
объя́тие = embrace

Prothetic *v*:

во́тчина = patrimony,
cf. оте́ц = father
во́семь = eight

It is also used in the oblique cases of the 3rd person Personal Pronoun after prepositions which govern the pronoun: e.g. ему́ = to him (Dat.), but к нему́ = to(wards) him; и́ми = with them (Inst.), but с ни́ми = (in company) with them.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF RUSSIAN

Those marked * are not shared with Ukrainian and Byelorussian.[1]

1. In words which in O.S. contained a number of consecutive syllables with semi-vowels (either ъ or ь), the final and the prepenultimate one regularly disappeared (ь leaving a palatalization of the consonant), while the penultimate one developed into a full vowel: ъ into o, and ь into e, compare e.g.:—

дьньсь, днесь	= to-day (archaic)	мъхъ, мох	= moss
		сто, сто	= hundred
сънъ, сон	= sleep	слъза, слеза́	= tear (C.S. slьza)
кръвь, кровь	= blood (C.S. Acc. s. krъvь)		

2. The nasal vowels ѧ and ѫ developed into я and у respectively, compare e.g.:—

семѧ, се́мя	= seed	пѫть, путь	= way
пѧть, пять	= five	женѫ, жену́	= wife (Acc. sing.)

3. "Polnoglasie"—полногла́сие: this is the Russian name for the feature alluded to in the section on Metathesis p. 48. Taking т to represent any consonant, the rule can be concisely summarized as follows: medially the common Slav syllables tert, telt, tort, tolt (in O.S. трѣт, тлѣт, трат, тлат by metathesis and vowel lengthening) develop in Russian into терет, (телет or) толот, торот, толот, e.g.:—

Cf. O.S. брѣгъ, R. бе́рег = coast
O.S. млѣко, R. молоко́ = milk
O.S. градъ, R. го́род = town
O.S. младъ, R. мо́лод = young

[1] For features characteristic of all three East Slavonic

The O.S. forms, such as град (= city), глава́ (= chief, chapter), which coëxist in modern literary Russian, side by side with the true Russian forms го́род (= town), голова́ (= head), are loan-words from the church language comparable to Latin or Norman/Anglo-Saxon pairs of equivalents in English: mutton, sheep; beef, bull; chant, song; or, for doublets in English of Romance origin: guarantee, warrant; dominion, domain.

4. ж (from *dj*) where O.S. has жд: (O.S. loan forms coëxist, here and in 5):

урожа́й = harvest but: рожде́ние = birth

ч (from *tj* and *ktj*) where O.S. has щ:—

горя́чий (= hot)—the true Russian form; ночь = night
горя́щий (= burning)—O.S. ending borrowed

5. ё where O.S. has e:—

нёбо = palate cf. R. не́бо = heaven
падёж = cattle-plague cf. R. паде́ж = (grammatical) case

6.* The pronunciation of the masc. and neut. Gen. sing. ending of adjectives and pronouns as ɔvə, əvə, ɪvə:—

молодо́го = of...young, pron. məɫʌ'dɔvə
бе́лого = of white, pron. 'bɛɫəvə
си́него = of blue, pron. 'ɕiɲɪvə

7. Initial *je* changes to *o* in Russian, e.g.:—

cf. O.S. ѥдинъ, R. оди́н = one
O.S. ѥзеро, R. о́зеро = lake

8. о and е or ё are the Russian fill-vowels in cases of consonantal agglomerations:—

о́кон = of windows
надо мно́й = above me
but also—
земля́ (= earth), Gen. plur. земе́ль;
сестра́ (= sister), Gen. plur. сестёр.

9.* ч, щ soft:—

чай = tea щу́ка = pike
ночь = night по́мощь = help

10. The palatal pronunciation of р in рь, ре, ря, etc., also partly in Ukrainian (only):—

зверь = wild beast
мо́ре = sea, Gen. sing. мо́ря

11.* The change of ы to о and и to е before *j*:—

Languages, see p. 117 and pp. 199-200.

мыть = to wash мбю = I wash
брить = to shave, брéю = I shave

12. Common Slav hard vocalic *ł* and soft vocalic *ł'* both become ол in Russian:—

долг = debt (<dьłg-), cf. Polish dług
молчáть = to be silent (<mьłč-), cf. Polish milczeć

Common Slav hard vocalic *r̥* gives ор, but soft vocalic *r̥'* gives ер:—

торг = bargaining (<tъrg-), cf. Polish targ
первый = first (<pьrv-), cf. Polish pierwszy

13. Akanie, i.e. the pronunciation of unstressed о as а (see section on the modification of unstressed vowels above), also in Byelorussian:—

бородá (= beard), pronounced as бəрадá, bərʌ'da

For other important features shared with Byelorussian, see p. 196.

14.* Soft final -пь, -бь[p̥], -фь, -вь[f̥], e.g.

топь = swamp, гóлубь = pigeon;
верфь = shipyard, dock, кровь = blood.

MORPHOLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS

15. The Acc. plur. of animate nouns, masc., fem. and neut., is the same in form as the Gen. plur. (by analogy with the masc. Acc. sing.):

жéнщин = (of) women утя́т = (of) ducklings
олéней = (of) stags

16.* Nom. pl. of masc. nouns in -á, -я́:

городá = towns
учителя́ = teachers, as well as учи́тели

17. Frequent use of the ending -ей for the Gen. pl. of nouns:

костéй = of bones царéй = of czars
олéней = of stags морéй = of seas

18. Preservation of the dissyllabic adjectival endings in the Nom. sing. fem. and neut., and Nom. plur. (used for definite adjs. in O.S.), cf. Byelorussian:

бéлая, бéлое, бéлые = white

19.* Stressed adjectival ending in Nom. sing. masc. in -ой:

молодóй = young

20. Stressed or unstressed ending -ой for Gen.,

Dat., Instr. and Loc. sing. fem. of hard adjectives:

бéлой = of...white; молодóй = of...young;

and -ей for soft stem adjectives:

си́ней = of...blue.

21.* The loss of наи- as sign of the Superlative degree of an adjective.

22.* Final т(ъ) in the 3rd pers. sing. and plur. of the Present tense:

несёт, несýт = he carries, they carry

Modern Bulgarian and Macedonian share this feature for the plural.

23.* ть for the ending of the Infinitive:—

дéлать = to do

24.* -щий, etc., for the ending of the Present Participle Active in the literary language:—

несýщий = (who is) carrying
ви́дящий = (who is) seeing

25.* The preservation of the Present Participle Passive:—

ведóмый = (who is being) lead
гони́мый = (who is being) pursued
(книга) читáемая = a book (which is being) read...

But: сравни́мый = comparable; знакóмый = familiar; etc.

A BRIEF SUMMARY OF RUSSIAN MORPHOLOGY

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Owing to the loss of the O.S. *ū*-stem and *ŭ*-stem declensions[1] there are only four main declensions in Russian, the *o*-stems being sub-divided into masculines and neuters.

The three genders are retained; but the Dual number has disappeared as a regular grammatical feature, as has also the Vocative case. There are therefore two numbers, singular and plural, and six cases—Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Instrumental, and Locative. (This is the usual order

[1] *ū*-stems have all changed their declension, e.g.:—
цéрковь (= church), like кость.
смóква (= fig), like жéнщина.
ŭ-stems as such also no longer exist, but have left traces of their case endings in the masc. o-stems.

for Russian.)

1. *i*-stems. (The masculine *i*- stems have disappeared, путь (= way) now counting as irregular: G. D. L. sing. пути, I. sing. путем.) Feminine only.

кость = bone

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	кость	кости
Gen.	кости	костей
Dat.	кости	костям
Acc.	кость	кости
Instr.	костью	костями
Loc.	кости	костях

but from лошадь—

Acc. pl. лошадей (= horses)(= Gen. for animate nouns, as in masc.)
Instr. pl. лошадьми (original ending)

2. Consonant stems, with -*n*- only. Ten neuters only, including имя = name.

время = time

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	время	времена
Gen.	времени	времён
Dat.	времени	временам
Acc.	время	времена
Instr.	временем	временами
Loc.	времени	временах

3. *a*-stems, mostly feminine. In Russian the endings of the hard *a*-stems, as opposed to the soft *ja*-stems, have predominated and become generalized. The modern soft declension has the same or the corresponding vowel sounds as endings, preceded by *j*, hence they are written -и, -ю, -ей, -ям, etc., for -ы, -у, -ой, ам respectively.

женщина = woman; земля = earth; армия = army

	Hard	*Sing.*	Soft
Nom.	женщина	земля	армия
Gen.	женщины	земли	армии
Dat.	женщине	земле	армии
Acc.	женщину	землю	армию
Instr.	женщиной (-ою)	землей	армией
Loc.	женщине	земле	армии

	Hard	*Plur.*	Soft
Nom.	женщины	земли	армии
Gen.	женщин	земель	армий
Dat.	женщинам	землям	армиям
Acc.	женщин (-ы for inanim. as in masc.)	земли	армии
Instr.	женщинами	землями	армиями
Loc.	женщинах	землях	армиях

Masculine nouns in -а are declined regularly: e.g.

слуга = servant, юноша = a youth

4. (*a*) Masculine *o*-stems. Here, too, the original hard stem endings have become generalized, as is proved in the Acc. plur. As in the *a*-stems, the soft *o* declension is merely the hard *o* declension with *j* preceding the endings, changing -о- to -е-.

стол = table олень = deer

	Hard	*Sing.* Soft	*Plur.*	
Nom.	стол	олень	столы	олени
Gen.	стола	оленя	столов	оленей
Dat.	столу	оленю	столам	оленям
Acc.	стол (inanimate)	оленя (animate)	столы	оленей*
Instr.	столом	оленем	столами	оленями
Loc.	столе	олене	столах	оленях

*But: трамваи = trams, (inanimate) from трамвай, Gen. pl. трамваев.

Like the above, but with a 'fleeting' vowel in the stem:

отец = father, Gen. s. отца
сон = sleep, dream, Gen. s. сна
день = day, Gen. s. дня

Examples of the influence of the *й*-stems:—

фунт чаю—(partitive Gen.) = pound of tea
в саду, лесу—(Loc. s.) = in the garden, wood

Traces of old *й*-stems can also be seen in:—

сын (= son), Nom. plur. сыновья

as well as in the widely used Gen. plur. ending -ов: e.g. столов.

Survival of the Dual endings, now often unexpectedly extended:—

глаза = eyes
берега = banks (of a river)
города = towns
доктора = doctors

Survival of collective plur. in *-ja*:

брат = brother, Nom. plur. братья́
cf. Serbocr. бра̑ћа.
друг = friend, Nom. plur. друзья́
князь = prince, " " князья́
муж = husband, " " мужья́
стул = chair, " " сту́лья, etc.

Nouns in -(н)ин have Nom. pl. in -(н)е: граждани́н = citizen, N. pl. гра́ждане, Gen. Acc. pl. гра́ждан.

4. (*b*) Neuter *o*-stems. Here too the hard stem endings have predominated, as is shown in the ending for the Loc. sing. мо́ре.

село́ = village; мо́ре = sea; зда́ние = building

	hard		soft	
		Sing.		
Nom.	село́	мо́ре		зда́ние
Gen.	села́	мо́ря		зда́ния
Dat.	селу́	мо́рю		зда́нию
Acc.	село́	мо́ре		зда́ние
Instr.	село́м	мо́рем		зда́нием
Loc.	селе́	мо́ре	*but*	зда́нии
		Plur.		
Nom.	сёла	моря́		зда́ния
Gen.	сёл	море́й		зда́ний
Dat.	сёлам	моря́м		зда́ниям
Acc.	сёла	моря́		зда́ния
Instr.	сёлами	моря́ми		зда́ниями
Loc.	сёлах	моря́х		зда́ниях

Survival of Dual endings:—

у́ши	= ears,	Gen. pl.	уше́й	(Nom. s. у́хо)
пле́чи	= shoulders,	" "	плече́й	(" " плечо́)
коле́ни	= knees,	" "	коле́ней	(" " коле́но)
о́чи (poet.)	= eyes,	" "	оче́й	(" " о́ко)
я́блоки	= apples,	" "	я́блок	(" " я́блоко)

Note: не́бо = sky, has plur. небеса́ (from consonantal decl.); чу́до = a marvel, miracle, has plur. чудеса́.

The masc. ребёнок (= child), цыплёнок (= chicken), котёнок (= kitten), утёнок (= duckling), etc., have plurals ребя́та, цыпля́та, котя́та, утя́та also from the consonantal decl. As they indicate animate beings, their Acc. plur. is the same as their Gen. plur.: ребя́т, цыпля́т, котя́т, утя́т, etc. Note the spelling after ш: мышо́нок (= baby mouse), N. pl. мыша́та, A., G. pl. мыша́т.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES—see below

There are no indefinite adjectives or participles declined like nouns in Russian.

NUMERALS

Cardinal

1 is declined and treated like an adjective.
2, 3, and 4 govern the Gen. sing.
5 onwards govern the Gen. plur.

From 2 onwards the Acc. is the same as the Nom. 5 onwards all decline in the same way, up to 90 (and except 40).

2, 3, and 4 govern a noun in the Gen. sing. with the qualifying adjective in Nom. or Gen. plur., e.g.:—

два бе́лые or бе́лых стола́ = two white tables.

but in the oblique cases numeral, adjective, and noun agree in the case demanded by the sentence, e.g.:—

трём се́рым осла́м = to three grey asses.

		Gen./Loc.	*Dat.*	*Instr.*
1	оди́н, одна́, одно́ (declined like э́тот, see p. 60)			
2	два (masc. and neut.), две (fem.)	двух	двум	двумя́
3	три	трёх	трём	тремя́
4	четы́ре	четырёх	четырём	четырьмя́
5	пять	пяти́	пяти́	пятью́
6	шесть			
7	семь			
8	во́семь			
9	де́вять			
10	де́сять			
11	оди́ннадцать			
12	двена́дцать			
13	трина́дцать			
14	четы́рнадцать			
15	пятна́дцать			
16	шестна́дцать			
17	семна́дцать			
18	восемна́дцать			
19	девятна́дцать			
20	два́дцать			
		Gen.		
21	два́дцать оди́н			
30	три́дцать			
40	со́рок	сорока́		
50	пятьдеся́т	пяти́десяти		
60	шестьдеся́т			

		Gen.
70	се́мьдесят	
80	во́семьдесят	
90	девяно́сто	девяно́ста
100	сто	ста
200	две́сти	двухсо́т
300	три́ста	трёхсо́т
400	четы́реста	четырёхсо́т
500	пятьсо́т	пятисо́т
600	шестьсо́т	
1,000	ты́сяча	
2,000	две ты́сячи	
5,000	пять ты́сяч	
1,000,000	миллио́н	миллио́на

The *Ordinal* Numerals пе́рвый, второ́й, тре́тий = first, second, third, etc. are declined like adjectives—see below. In compound Ordinals only the last figure is ordinal, e.g.:—

100th = со́тый, but 101st = сто пе́рвый.

Notice the use of the Genitive form in the first half of the (compound) upper tens and the hundreds, e.g.:—

пятидеся́тый = fiftieth, etc.

1st	пе́рвый, пе́рвая, пе́рвое
2nd	второ́й, втора́я, второ́е
3rd	тре́тий, тре́тья, тре́тье
4th	четвёртый, etc.
5th	пя́тый,
6th	шесто́й
7th	седьмо́й
8th	восьмо́й
9th	девя́тый
10th	деся́тый
11th	оди́ннадцатый
12th	двена́дцатый
13th	трина́дцатый
14th	четы́рнадцатый
15th	пятна́дцатый
16th	шестна́дцатый
17th	семна́дцатый
18th	восемна́дцатый
19th	девятна́дцатый
20th	двадца́тый
21st	два́дцать пе́рвый, etc.
30th	тридца́тый
40th	сороково́й
50th	пятидеся́тый

60th	шестидеся́тый
70th	семидеся́тый
80th	восьмидеся́тый
90th	девяно́стый
100th	со́тый 101st сто первый, etc.
200th	двухсо́тый
300th	трёхсо́тый
400th	четырёхсо́тый
500th	пятисо́тый
600th	шестисо́тый, etc.
1,000th	ты́сячный
2,000th	двухты́сячный
5,000th	пятиты́сячный
1,000,000th	миллио́нный

Collective Numerals: Special forms exist for the numbers 2-10, and are used with pronouns and nouns of mixed gender thought of as a group, and also with adjectives used as nouns and pluralia tantum. They are followed by the noun in the Gen. pl. and a verb in the (neuter) singular or in the plural.

2	дво́е	6	ше́стеро
3	тро́е	7	се́меро
4	че́тверо	8	во́сьмеро
5	пя́теро	9	девя́теро
		10	деся́теро

Нас бы́ло тро́е	=	There were three of us
У меня дво́е дете́й	=	I have two children
Пя́теро больны́х пришли́ (пришло́)	=	Five sick people have come
У него́ дво́е часо́в	=	He has two watches

Notice: пол- / полови́на } + Gen. = half

полтора́ (masc. and neut.) / полторы́ (fem.) } + Gen. = one and a half

oblique cases (all genders): полу́тора followed by the case required

два (etc.) с полови́ной = two (etc.) and a half

Distributive Numerals are formed with по + Acc. for the numerals 2, 3, 4, 40, 90 and 100: по два рубля́ = two roubles each; but for all other numbers по takes the Dative: по пяти́ рубле́й = five roubles each.

PRONOUNS

The Pronominal declension in Russian is very similar to that in Old Slavonic. Owing to the predominance of the former *definite* adjectives in Russian, the pronominal and adjectival declensions follow the same lines. The pronominal declension covers the following categories:—

Demonstrative: тот (that), э́тот (this)
Interrogative: кто (who), что (what), чей (whose), како́й (what kind of)
Indefinite: не́кто (someone), не́который (some), кто́-то, кто́-нибудь (someone)
Negative: никто́ (no one), ничего́ (pron.-во́), (nothing, used as a Nominative as well as ничто́)
Possessive: мой (my), наш (our)[1]
Definitive: весь (all), сам (-self), тот же (the same), тако́й (such), каждый (every), вся́кий (every, every kind of), друго́й (or ино́й) (other), мно́гие (pl.)(many)
Personal: он (he), я (I), ты (thou)

The Relative and Interrogative pronoun кото́рый (who, which) follows the adjectival declension, as also does како́й (= qualis, of what kind?), and some other pronouns. (See Adjectives.) There are no enclitic Personal Pronouns in Russian. *N.B.* In the declensions that follow, the letter г in the ending -го of the Gen. sg. masc. and neut. is always pronounced as a Russian в, phon. v.

тот = that

	SING.			PLUR.
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*Masc., Neut. and Fem.*
Nom.	тот	то	та	те
Gen.	того́		той	тех
Dat.	тому́		той	тем
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	то	ту	=Nom./Gen.
Instr.	тем		той	те́ми
Loc.	том		той	тех

э́тот = this, is declined identically, except that it replaces е with и: э́ти, э́тим, э́тих, etc.

[1]For the Possessive Adjectives of the 3rd persons, when not referring to the subject of the clause, Russian uses the Genitives of the 3rd person Personal Prounouns (which are, of course, invariable as to the gender or case of the noun qualified), viz.: его́ (= his), её (= her), их (= their).

N.B.—The neuter declension is identical with the masc., except in the Acc. sing. where it is *always* the same as the Nom. In the masc. sing. and in all genders of the plur., Acc. = Nom. for inanimate nouns, but Acc. = Gen. for animates.

	кто = who	что = what
Nom.	кто	что
Gen.	кого́	чего́
Dat.	кому́	чему́
Acc.	кого́	что
Instr.	кем	чем
Loc.	ком	чём

	весь = all			мой = my, mine		
SING.	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*
Nom.	весь	всё	вся	мой	моё	моя́
Gen.	всего́		всей	моего́		моей
Dat.	всему́		всей	моему́		моей
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	всё	всю	=Nom./Gen.	моё	мою́
Instr.	всем		всей	мои́м		моей
Loc.	всём		всей	моём		моей

PLUR.	*Masc., Neut. and Fem.*	*Masc., Neut. and Fem.*
Nom.	все	мои́
Gen.	всех	мои́х
Dat.	всем	мои́м
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	=Nom./Gen.
Instr.	все́ми	мои́ми
Loc.	всех	мои́х

Like мой are declined: твой = your(s)(familiar), свой (possessive referring to the grammatical subject), чей m., чья f., чьё n., чьи pl. = whose?, with the stem чь-, e.g. Gen. sing. m., n. чьего́; and, with initial stress, наш = our(s), ваш = your(s); and the archaic сей m., сия́ f., сие́ n. = this, Gen. sing. m., n. сего́.

	сам = -self,			он = he,	она́ = she,	оно́ = it
SING.	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*
Nom.	сам	само́	сама́	он	оно́	она́
Gen.	самого́		само́й	его́(него́)[1]		её(нее́)[1]
Dat.	самому́		само́й	ему́(нему́)		ей(ней)
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	само́	саму́ (самоё)	его́(него́)		её(нее́)

[1]The forms with initial н are used after governing prepositions. In его́ and него́ г is pronounced v = jɪ'vo, ɲɪ'vo. After the preposition у the Gen. sing. fem. form can also be ней: у ней = у нее́ = at her place.

Instr.	самим	самой	им[1] (ним)[2]	ей (ней, ею, нею)[2]
Loc.	самом	самой	нём	ней

PLUR.	*Masc., Neut. and Fem.*	*Masc., Neut. and Fem.*
Nom.	сами	они́
Gen.	самих	их[1] (них)[2]
Dat.	самим	им[1] (ним)
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	их[1] (них)
Instr.	самими	и́ми[1] (ними)
Loc.	самих	них

я = I, мы = we, ты = thou, вы = you, себя = self

Nom.	я	мы	ты	вы	—
Gen.	меня́	нас	тебя́	вас	себя́
Dat.	мне	нам	тебе́	вам	себе́
Acc.	меня́	нас	тебя́	вас	себя́
Instr.	мной	на́ми	тобо́й	ва́ми	собо́й
Loc.	мне	нас	тебе́	вас	себе́

ADJECTIVES

The Declension of Adjectives

Many adjectives in Russian have two forms—the predicative with short (monosyllabic) ending and the attributive with long (dissyllabic) ending in the Nom. The former are used only in the Nom. case in modern colloquial and literary Russian and vary only in gender and number; they are formed only from descriptive adjectives, e.g.—

Он здоро́в = he is well.
Она́ здоро́ва = she is well.
Э́то дёшево = This is cheap.
Они́ мо́лоды = They are young.

The declension of the attributive adjective was originally compound, consisting of a combination of the noun declension with the 3rd person pronoun declension suffixed. The endings underwent contraction, the final result being, not unexpectedly, similar to the pronominal declension. As in the pronouns, the г in the ending -го of the Gen. sing. masc. and neut. is pronounced [v].

The declension of the attributive adjective

[1]Pronounced formerly: jim, jix, 'jim̩i.
[2]The forms with initial н are used after governing prepositions.

falls into four subdivisions:—

1. hard stems not finally stressed, e.g. здоро́вый.
2. hard stems finally stressed, e.g. молодо́й.
3. velar stems (not finally stressed), e.g. вели́кий.
4. soft and hush-sibilant (Fr. *chuintante*) stems, e.g. си́ний, хоро́ший.

1. здоро́вый = healthy

SING.	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All Genders.*
Nom.	здоро́вый	здоро́вое	здоро́вая	здоро́вые
Gen.	здоро́вого		здоро́вой	здоро́вых
Dat.	здоро́вому		здоро́вой	здоро́вым
Add.	=Nom./Gen.[1]	здоро́вое	здоро́вую	=Nom./Gen.
Instr.	здоро́вым		здоро́вой	здоро́выми
Loc.	здоро́вом		здоро́вой	здоро́вых

2. молодо́й = young

SING.	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All Genders.*
Nom.	молодо́й	молодо́е	молода́я	молоды́е
Gen.	молодо́го		молодо́й	молоды́х
Dat.	молодо́му		молодо́й	молоды́м
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	молодо́е	молоду́ю	=Nom./Gen.
Instr.	молоды́м		молодо́й	молоды́ми
Loc.	молодо́м		молодо́й	молоды́х

(These endings are spelt identically as in class 1, but are pronounced with the stress on the first syllable of the ending.)

3. вели́кий = great

SING.	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All Genders.*
Nom.	вели́кий	вели́кое	вели́кая	вели́кие
Gen.	вели́кого		вели́кой	вели́ких
Dat.	вели́кому		вели́кой	вели́ким
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	вели́кое	вели́кую	=Nom./Gen.
Instr.	вели́ким		вели́кой	вели́кими
Loc.	вели́ком		вели́кой	вели́ких

(This declension is also identical except for the fact that ы never occurs after a velar in Russian, и being used instead.)

N.B. The pronouns ка́ждый (= each), кото́рый (= which), тако́й (= such), како́й (= of what kind), вся́кий (= every), are declined on the above models.

[1]As in the nouns, Acc. sing. masc. and all Acc. plurals = Gen. for animates, and = Nom. for inanimates.

4. Soft stems: си́ний = blue, ры́бий = fish('s), belonging to fish.

SING.	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All Genders.*
Nom.	си́ний	си́нее	си́няя	си́ние
Gen.	си́него		си́ней	си́них
Dat.	си́нему		си́ней	си́ним
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	си́нее	си́нюю	=Nom./Gen.
Instr.	си́ним		си́ней	си́ними
Loc.	си́нем		си́ней	си́них
Nom.	ры́бий	ры́бье	ры́бья	ры́бьи
Gen.	ры́бьего		ры́бьей	ры́бьих
Dat.	ры́бьему		ры́бьей	ры́бьим
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	ры́бье	ры́бью	=Nom./Gen.
Instr.	ры́бьим		ры́бьей	ры́бьими
Loc.	ры́бьем		ры́бьей	ры́бьих

(It will be noticed that, except in the Nom. and Acc., the endings of ры́бий are identical with those of си́ний, with the addition of a preceding ь.)

The *chuintante* stems in ш, ж, ч, щ, if not finally stressed, are declined like си́ний except in the Nom. and Acc. sing. fem. which end in -ая and -ую, e.g. хоро́шая, хоро́шую (= good).

There are few corresponding predicative forms for the adjectives with soft endings:—

хоро́ш, хороша́, хорошо́, хороши́ = good
горя́ч, горячо́ = hot
све́ж, свежо́ = fresh
похо́ж, похо́жа, похо́же, похо́жи = similar, like

Possessive Adjectives in -ин, -ын, such as дя́дин = uncle's, are declined as hard stem adjectives, but have short nominal endings in the Nom. and Acc. But *surnames* ending in -в and -н of Slavonic origin have a mixed declension (while those in -ский are declined like вели́кий).

Ива́нов (surname)

SING.	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All Genders.*
Nom.	Ива́нов	Ива́нова	Ива́новы
Gen.	Ива́нова	Ива́новой	Ива́новых
Dat.	Ива́нову	Ива́новой	Ива́новым
Acc.	Ива́нова	Ива́нову	Ива́новых
Instr.	Ива́новым	Ива́новой	Ива́новыми
Loc.	Ива́нове	Ива́новой	Ива́новых

But a *placename* Ива́ново has Acc. Ива́ново, Instr.

Ива́новом.

(It will be noticed that in Russian there is no "indefinite" declension of the adjective as in O.S. and Serbocroätian.)

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

As in adjectives of the Positive degree, there are in Russian both attributive and predicative forms of the Comparative and Superlative degrees of the adjective. And just as in many cases the Positive attributive adjective can be used predicatively, so likewise the attributive forms of the Comparative and Superlative degrees can also be used in the predicative position. (But the predicative is not used attributively.) E.g.:—

Attributive:—

э́то высо́кий дом = This is a tall house.
э́то бо́лее высо́кий дом = This is a taller house.
э́то са́мый высо́кий дом = This is the tallest house.

Predicative:—

э́тот дом высо́к or э́тот дом высо́кий = This house is tall.
э́тот дом вы́ше or э́тот дом бо́лее высо́кий = This house is taller.
э́тот дом вы́ше всех э́тот дом са́мый высо́кий = This house is the tallest.

For most adjectives the *predicative* Comparative is formed by adding -ее (occasionally shortened to -ей) to the stem of the Positive adjective, e.g.:—

дли́нный, длинне́е = long
прямо́й, прямее́ = straight
краси́вый, краси́вее = beautiful

but with a number of common adjectives contractions and consonantal changes have taken place:—

густо́й, гу́ще = dense
ре́дкий, ре́же = rare
коро́ткий, коро́че = short
кре́пкий, кре́пче = firm
бога́тый, бога́че = rich

ти́хий, ти́ше	= quiet
дорого́й, доро́же	= dear
дешёвый, деше́вле	= cheap
молодо́й, моло́же	= young
бли́зкий, бли́же	= near
широ́кий, ши́ре	= wide
ста́рый, ста́рше	= old
далёкий, да́льше	= far
до́лгий, до́льше	= long (in time)

These are also the forms of the corresponding Comparative adverbs.

A few adjectives have corresponding attributive Comparative forms ending in -ший. These are mostly used in special senses:—

большо́й, бо́льший	= greater
высо́кий, вы́сший	= upper
молодо́й, мла́дший	= junior
ста́рый, ста́рший	= elder, senior
да́льний, дальне́йший	= subsequent, further
ни́зкий, ни́зший	= lower, inferior

Notice the irregular comparatives:

сла́дкий	= sweet,	comp.	сла́ще
глубо́кий	= deep,	"	глу́бже
большо́й	= big,	"	бо́льше
ма́лый, ма́ленький	= small,	"	ме́ньше
хоро́ший	= good,	"	лу́чше
плохо́й	= bad,	"	ху́же

The declinable attributive Comparatives лу́чший / ху́дший can mean *either* better / worse *or* best / worst.

The normal Superlative is formed with са́мый(m.), са́мая(f.), са́мое(n.), са́мые(pl.) and the positive degree: e.g. са́мый хоро́ший = the best.

The form -айший, -ейший has come to have the meaning of an absolute Superlative in Russian, "the very smallest", etc. It is only formed from a few adjectives, e.g.:—

мале́йший	= the slightest
нове́йший	= the latest
длинне́йший	= the lengthiest
чисте́йший	= the purest, sheer
высоча́йший	= the most exalted, extreme.

The Superlative with the prefix наи- is archaic and rare in Russian, the most frequently used being:—

наилу́чший	= the best
наибо́льший	= the greatest
наиме́ньший	= the least

"Very" or "extremely" can also be expressed by the prefix пре-, e.g.—

преснве́рный	= very bad

Than = чем or не́жели, followed by the Nominative—

он то́лще чем я	= he is fatter than I

or else the Gen. case can be used:—

он то́лще меня́.

Notice also the form for expressing "rather" or "somewhat", + Comparative:—

по-лу́чше	= rather better
да́йте что́-нибудь *по*-деше́вле	= give (us) something cheaper

"rather" + Positive = довольно (дешёвый).
Less than = ме́ньше чем.
The (bigger), *the* (better)=*чем* бо́льше, *тем* лу́чше.
As (big) *as* = *такой же* большо́й *как*.
As (soon) *as possible* = *как мо́жно* скоре́е.
The biggest *of* them = са́мый большо́й *из* них.

ADVERBS

Adverbs in Russian are mostly identical in form with the neut. sing. Nom. of the short (predicative) form of the adjective and end in o, e.g.:—

высоко́ = high (adv.)

Soft adjectives can have adverbs ending in e, e.g.:—

кра́йне = extremely

while adjectives in -ский give adverbs ending in -ски,

e.g.:— дру́жески = in a friendly way, warmly

Adverbs of time, place, manner, degree, etc. can have various endings:—

Place:—

тут, здесь = here
там = there
сюда́ = hither, (to) here
туда́ = thither, (to) there
отсю́да = from here, hence
отту́да = from there, thence
везде́, всю́ду = everywhere
нигде́ = nowhere
бли́зко = near
далеко́ = far
вон = out
вне = outside
внутри́ = inside
снару́жи = outside, from outside
наверху́ = above, upstairs
внизу́ = below, downstairs
вперёд = forward(s)
наза́д = backwards
сза́ди = (from) behind
и́здали = from afar, at a distance
позади́ = behind, in the rear
вокру́г = around
до́ма = at home
домо́й = home

Time:—

тепе́рь, ны́не (arch.) = now
тогда́ = then
пото́м = afterwards
сего́дня = today
вчера́ = yesterday
за́втра = tomorrow
уже́ = already
ещё = still, yet
всегда́ = always
по́здно = late
ра́но = early
ве́чером = in the evening
у́тром = in the morning
наконе́ц = at last
скоро, вскоре = soon
опя́ть = again
пока́ = meanwhile
сейча́с = now, presently, soon
сейча́с же = immediately
подча́с = at times, occasionally
иногда́ = sometimes
никогда́ = never
по́сле = afterwards
пре́жде = before, formerly
накану́не = on the eve
вдруг = suddenly
сра́зу, то́тча́с = immediately, at once
раз, одна́жды = once
ча́сто = often
ре́дко = seldom, rarely
неда́вно = recently, lately
давно́ = a long time ago
постоя́нно = constantly
навсегда́, наве́к = forever
то́лько что = just
как ра́з = exactly, just

Manner:—

так = so, thus
и́на́че = differently, otherwise
ника́к = in no way
ко́е-ка́к = somehow
э́так (colloq.) = so
ме́дленно = slowly
бы́стро = fast, quickly
вме́сте = together
отде́льно, врозь = separately
неожи́данно = unexpectedly
обыкнове́нно = usually
не́хотя = half-heartedly, inadvertently
понево́ле = willy-nilly, unwillingly
да́ром = gratis, in vain
зря = in vain
укра́дкой = stealthily
пря́мо = straight (on), directly
нале́во = to the left
напра́во = to the right
то́чно = exactly
пешко́м = on foot
наро́чно = on purpose

Degree:—

о́чень = very
весьма́ (lit. lang.) = very
мно́го = much
ма́ло = little
немно́жко = a little
сто́лько = so much
не́сколько = some, somewhat
почти́ = almost
едва́ = hardly
сли́шком = too much, too
бо́льше = more
ме́ньше = less
дово́льно = enough
слегка́ = slightly
отча́сти = partly
е́ле-е́ле = hardly, just
чуть-чу́ть = just a little
постепе́нно = gradually
понемно́гу = little by little
действи́тельно = really
коне́чно = certainly, of course
совсе́м = quite, wholly
соверше́нно = completely
осо́бенно = especially
то́лько, лишь = only
мо́жет быть = perhaps
наве́рно = probably
наверня́ка́ = for sure
вообще́ = in general, at all
в о́бщем = on the whole, all in all
черезчу́р = excessively
как ра́з = just
непреме́нно = without fail

Interrogative:—

где = where?
куда́ = where to? whither?
отку́да = where from? whence?
когда́ = when?
как = how?
ско́лько = how much? how many?
ка́к до́лго = how long?
почему́, отчего́, заче́м = why?

... ли	(enclitic interrogative particle)
ра́зве ...	= ... really ...?
неужёли ...	= surely ...? ... really...?
(как) бишь	= (how)then ...? now (how)...?

Not = не, but "no" = нет, and "yes" = да.
For the comparison of adverbs, see under "The Comparison of Adjectives", pp. 65-67.

CONJUNCTIONS AND PARTICLES

Conjunctions, too, have various forms, whether coördinating or subordinating:—

Coördinating:—

и	= and	всё же	= still
но	= but	поэ́тому, ита́к	= therefore
а	= and (adversative), but	сле́довательно	= consequently
да [də]	= (a weak) and	ста̀ло бы́ть (colloq.)	= so, therefore
и́ли ... и́ли	= either ... or	к тому́ же	= moreover
ни ... ни	= neither ... nor	и́бо	= for (causal)
одна́ко	= however	и́менно	= namely, to wit
всётаки	= nevertheless	чем	= than

Subordinating:—

е́сли, е́жели (pop., arch.)	= if	пока́	= while
когда́	= when	(до тёх по́р) пока́ ... не	= until
как	= as, how	с тёх по́р ка́к	= since
та́к ка̀к	= as, because	перед тём как	= before
потому́ что	= because	как то́лько	= as soon as
оттого́ что	= because	едва́	= hardly
раз	= once, since	чуть	= scarcely
что	= that (introducing indirect speech)	тогда́ как, между тём как	= while, whereas
		ка́к бы ... ни	= however much
та́к что	= so that	по ме́ре того́ ка́к	= (according) as
чтоб(ы)	= in order that	поско́льку, or наско́лько	= as far as
чтобы не	= lest	да́ром что	= even though, despite
хотя́, хоть	= although	как бу́дто	= as if
пусть	= let, even if		

Notable is the absence of да as a subordinating conjunction, so widely used in South Slav, as well as in Old Slavonic.

Particles:—

кста́ти	= by the way, incidentally	... то (emphatic particle)	= just, precisely; then
сло́вом	= in a word	уж (emphatic particle)	= really, then
наприме́р	= for example		
то́ есть, т.е.	= that is to say, i.e.	мо́жет быть	= maybe, perhaps
... мол, ... де́скать, ... де, ... г(ово)ри́т	= he says (quoting)	пожа́луй	= I suppose
		знать	= obviously
		чай	= I think
да́же	= even	авбсь	= maybe
... ведь (enclitic)	= after all	небо́сь	= doubtless
		зна́чит	= so then
... же (emphatic particle)	= then, but	я́кобы, бу́дто бы	= as if, apparently

PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions in Russian may govern any one, two or even three cases (except the Nom., of course).

With Gen.

без	= without	меж(ду) (arch.)	= among, between
из	= out of		
с	= off	близ (poet.)	= near
кро́ме	= except	бо́коло	= near
от	= from	во́зле	= by (the side of)
у	= by, near		
для	= for	вокру́г	= round
ра́ди[1]	= for the sake of	впереди́	= in front of
		ми́мо	= past
про́тив	= against	из-за	= from behind, because of
до	= up to, till	из-под	= from under
по́сле	= after	вслёдствие	= because of
прежде	= before (of time)	ввиду́	= in view of
		вро́де	= like
вместо	= instead of	относи́тельно	= regarding
среди́	= among		

[1]Also used as a *post*position: e.g. Бо́га ра́ди! = for God's sake! in the name of God!

With Dat.

к	= to	благодаря́	= thanks to
по	= along, according to	вслед	= following, after
вопреки́	= despite		

With Acc.

в	= into	за	= for, beyond, (to) behind
на	= on to		
сквозь	= through	про	= about
че́рез	= across	под	= under (motion)
о(б)	= against (an object)	с	expresses measurement
		по	= up to

With Instr.

с	= with	за	= behind (rest)
пе́ред	= before	под	= under (rest)
ме́жду	= between	над	= above

With Loc.

в	= in	при	= at, near
на	= on	по	= after, on account of
о(б)	= about		

As in O.S. пере(пре), раз, вы and also воз(вз) (=up) and низ (=down) are only used as prefixes, but про (=about) is used as a preposition with the Acc.

THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS

Voices and Tenses

The Russian verbal system is somewhat simpler than that of Old Slavonic owing to the loss of the Dual number, the Imperfect and Aorist tenses, the Past *Participle* Active (as such) in -лъ, the Supine, and the compound Pluperfect tense.

The Passive Voice is expressed, as in O.S., by a reflexive verb[1] (normally imperfective) or by the verb "to be" with the Past Participle Passive,[2] or by the 3rd pers. plur. used impersonally:—

Э́то счита́ется	= This is considered ...
Го́род был атако́ван	= The town was attacked.
Его́ зову́т	= He is called ...

The only true simple *tense* remaining in Russian

[1]The reflexive verb in Russian has the reflexive suffix -ся, which is contracted to -сь in all forms of the verb ending in a vowel, except the (Active) participles.

[2]When the Infinitive itself is used, the Past Part. Pass. is in the Instr. case: быть презре́нным (= to be despised). The Present Part. Pass. can be used to indicate a continuous process: быть почита́емым (= to be honoured).

is the *Present* (which in the case of Perfective verbs has a future meaning). The Personal endings are:—

Sing.	*Plur.*
1. -у(-ю)	1. -м
2. -шь	2. -те
3. -т	3. -ут(-ют), or -ат(-ят) for *i*-verbs.

These endings are joined to the verb stem, in the case of the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. and the 1st and 2nd pers. plur., by either е (pronounced ё when under stress, but no rule can be given as to when the stress occurs on the endings) or и. It should be noted that from the phonetic point of view these endings sound identical when not under stress, except in the 3rd pers. plur., which is -ут for е verbs and -ят, -ат for и verbs.

Owing to the fact that е in Russian always causes the preceding consonant to be palatalized, the first three O.S. classes of verbs, classified by their Presents, are really in Russian fused into one, though only the etymological knowledge of the previous separate existence of these three categories can explain why беру́ (= I take) has the ending in -у and орю́ (= I plough) has the ending with *j*, -ю. The classification of Russian verbs by their Present is far simpler than that by the Infinitives, of which 66 main types, taken in conjunction with their corresponding Presents, exist.

Owing to the effect of "polnoglasie", the play of the stress accent, and various other phonetic developments, many new *Infinitive* endings have come into existence in Russian. The usual ending is -ть, corresponding to the O.S. -ти:—

Polnoglasie: тере́ть (= to rub); коло́ть (= to prick).

Final Stress: грести́ (= to row); вести́ (= to lead); нести́ (= to carry); везти́ (= to transport).

Non-final Stress: сесть (= to sit down); пасть (= to fall); -честь (= to read (in compounds)); лезть (= to climb).

Development of the nasal vowels: дуть (= to blow); cf. жать (= to reap), нача́ть (= to begin); взять (= to take).

Change of vowel in Infin.: плыть (= to float), formerly плути.

Stem in velar[1]: лечь (= to lie down); влечь (=to drag); with "polnoglasie" толчь (= to pound).

For practical purposes the learner should assume that the Present endings of all verbs are -у, -ешь, etc., while realizing that some verbs, often common ones, in -ать (держа́ть, де́ржишь = hold) and -еть (горе́ть, гори́шь = burn ; терпе́ть, те́рпишь = suffer) and practically all verbs in -ить except those with monosyllabic Infinitives, together with a few exceptions in -ять (стоя́ть = stand, боя́ться = fear)—have Present endings in -ю/у,-ишь, -ят, e.g.:—

дари́ть, дари́шь = present
люби́ть, лю́бишь = love

but

бить, бьёшь = beat
брить, бре́ешь = shave
гнить, гниёшь = rot
жить, живёшь = live

In conversation uncertainty on this point will only be noticeable in the case of finally stressed verbs, i.e. about half the number.

For comparative purposes and with the above remarks in mind, we give below a classification of the Russian verbs according to Present and Infinitive on the exact scheme used previously for Old Slavonic. All the verbs with "new" Infinitives listed above fall into the e Russian category, i.e. Classes I-III below.

Etymological Classification of Russian Verbs according to their Presents, with Subdivisions according to their Infinitives

I. A.a. несёт нести́* = to carry. Same stem in Present and Infinitive, consonantal stem.
b. плывёт плыть = float. Same stem in Present and Infinitive, formerly vowel stem.
B.a. берёт брать = take. Infin. in -ать, consonantal stem.

[1]See Class I A a and footnote in *Etymological Classification of Russian Verbs*, this page.

*So also: печёт печь = to bake, 1st p.sing. пеку́
умрёт умере́ть = to die (Pfve.)
начнёт нача́ть = to begin (Pfve.)

b. рвёт рвать = tear. Infin. in -ать, vowel stem originally (derived from ръвати).

II. дви́нет дви́нуть = move(Pfve.). *n*-stems.

III. Presents with *-je-* endings.
1. Primary verbs.
A.a. зна́ет знать = know. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., vowel stem.
b. ме́лет молоть = grind. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
B.a. та́ет та́ять = melt. Infin. in -ять, vowel stem.
b. брет ора́ть = plough. Infin. in -ать, consonantal stem.
2. Derived verbs. All vowel stems.
A.a. де́лает де́лать = do. *a*-stem.
b. старе́ет старе́ть = grow old. Formerly ѣ-stem, now written e.
B. сове́тует сове́товать = advise. -у- Pres. stem, -овать Infin. (hard stem).
малю́ет малева́ть = colour. -ю- Pres. stem, -евать Infin. (soft stem).

IV. A. хва́лит хвали́ть = praise. -и- throughout.
B. ви́дит ви́деть = see. -и- Present, -е- (formerly -ѣ-) Infin.
лежи́т лежа́ть = lie, be lying. -и- Present, -е- (formerly -ѣ-) Infin. changed to -а- after *chuintantes*.

V. Athematic *m*-verbs—only two!
дам, даст дать = give(Pfve.)
ем, ест есть = eat

The Future Tense and the Aspects

The Future of Imperfective verbs is formed by using the Infinitive with the Future tense of the verb "to be", быть; e.g.:—

Sing.	1	бу́ду де́лать	I shall do, or be doing
	2	бу́дешь "	you will do, or be doing
	3	бу́дет "	etc.
Plur.	1	бу́дем "	
	2	бу́дете "	

3 бу́дут де́лать they will do, or be doing

Perfective verbs are Future in meaning in their "Present" form, for to the Slav an action cannot be regarded as complete *in the present*. There are various ways of forming Perfective verbs from Imperfective verbs, such as using another form of the same root:—

дыша́ть, дохну́ть = to breathe,

using prepositional prefixes (the commonest method):—

писа́ть, написа́ть = to write
проси́ть, попроси́ть = to request,

adding the ending -нуть:—

кива́ть, кивну́ть = to nod,

etc. In some cases the original verb is Perfective; the Imperfective is then formed by extending the root or lengthening it:—

дать, дава́ть = to give
деть, дева́ть = to put, stuff, do with.

This method is very common with verbs with prefixes, which are Perfective when the original Infinitive is used and Imperfective when the extended Infinitive has the same prefix:—

спроси́ть, спра́шивать = to ask (a question)
уговори́ть, угова́ривать = to persuade

No regular and all-applicable rule can be given as to the formation of the aspects, and only study and wide reading enables one to recognize them at sight. In all East and West Slav languages the Perfective Present has a future meaning in main as well as in subordinate clauses, as in O.S. and in contrast to the modern South Slav languages. There are also no absolute rules for forming the less common Frequentative sub-aspect.

A few common verbs for which totally different roots are used to express the two aspects:—

Impfve.Infin.	*Pres.*	*Pfve.Infin.*	*Fut.*
брать = to take	беру́, берёшь	взять	возьму́, -ёшь
бить = to beat	бью, бьёшь	уда́рить	уда́рю, -ишь
класть = to put	кладу́, -ёшь	положи́ть	положу́, полóжишь

лови́ть = to catch	ловлю́, лóвишь	пойма́ть	пойма́ю, -а́ешь
говори́ть = to speak, say	говорю́, -и́шь	сказа́ть	скажу́, ска́жешь

The Past Tense

The Past tense in Russian is formed in the same way from both Perfective and Imperfective verbs—by adding:—

-л (masc.)
-ла (fem.)
-ло (neut.)
-ли (plur.)

to the infinitive stem, that is, the Infin. without the -ть or -ти. These endings vary according to the gender and number of the subject, but not according to the person, which is indicated by a Personal Pronoun—also in the 3rd person when there is no substantival subject.

This tense is really the former Past Participle Active in -л, and formerly had the Present tense of быть as the auxiliary verb, as in modern South and West Slav languages. The dropping of this auxiliary verb in East Slav has caused the necessity for the use of the Personal Pronouns.

In meaning the Imperfective Past *generally* corresponds to the Imperfect tense of other languages, while the Perfective Past corresponds to the Past Definite, Preterite, or Aorist, and also to the Perfect.

In Russian, verbs whose infinitive stems go back to roots ending in с, з, к, г, б, р lose the л of the Past tense in the masc. sing. *only*, e.g.:—

нёс	from the Infin.			нести́	= carry
вёз	"	"	"	везти́	= convey
тёк	"	"	"	течь	= flow
мог	"	"	"	мочь	= be able
грёб	"	"	"	грести́	= row
тёр	"	"	"	тере́ть	= rub

Verbs with stems in dentals and Infinitives in -сть or -сти lose these dentals before the л of the Past tense in *all* genders. The Infinitives:—

вести́ (for ведти) = lead
упа́сть (for упадть) = fall
мести́ (for метти) = sweep

have Past tenses:—

вёл, вела́
упа́л, упа́ла
мёл, мела́

No invariable rule can be given on the shifting of the stress on to the final syllable in the fem. and neut. sing. and the plur. It was preserved in order to differentiate the genders more distinctly, as unstressed a and o sound the same: ə.

Verbs with Infinitives in -нуть which denote a process drop the syllable -ну- in the Past:—

сбхнуть, сох = grow dry
ки́снуть, кис = grow sour
мо́кнуть, мок = soak, get wet
сты́нуть, стыл = get cool

The following Pasts can be regarded as irregular:—

расти́, рос = grow
жечь, жёг, жгла = burn (trans.)
ушиби́ть, уши́б = knock (Pfve.)
сесть (Future: ся́ду), сел = sit down (Pfve.)
идти́, шёл, шла = go
исчёзнуть = disappear (Pfve.), has исчёз *and* исчёзнул.

The Conditional Mood

The Conditional in Russian is identical with the Past with the particle бы added:—

Я сде́лал бы э́то = I would do this

This particle is often contracted to б and in subordinate clauses generally follows immediately on the subordinating conjunction:—

хотя́ б(ы) я э́то де́лал = even if I were to do this

N.B. е́сли б(ы) (= if) should not be written as one word.

The Imperative Mood

The Imperative endings, always added to the Present stem, are (for both aspects):—

For verbs with consonantal stem:—

2nd pers. sing. (*a*) -и or (*b*) -ь
2nd pers. plur. (*a*) -ите or (*b*) -ьте

For verbs with vocalic stem:—

2nd pers. sing. -й
2nd pers. plur. -йте

The endings (*a*) are added to the Present stem (usually seen most clearly by removing the last three letters of the 2nd pers. sing.) when the *1st* pers. sing. is finally stressed, the endings (*b*) being used when the 1st pers. sing. is not finally stressed, e.g.:—

иду́, иди́ = go
люблю́, люби́ = love
бро́шу, бро́сишь, брось = throw (Pfve.)
ся́ду, сядь = sit down (Pfve.)

But endings (*a*) are used when the Present stem ends in two consonants:—

кри́кну, кри́кни = shout (Pfve.)

The Imperatives of verbs with vocalic stems can be finally stressed or not:—

де́лай = do
броса́й = throw (Impfve.)
сове́туй = advise
малю́й = paint

The following two verbs have irregular Imperatives:—

лечь, ля́гу: ляг = lie down
есть: ешь = eat

For the 1st. pers. plur. the same person of the Present or Perfective Future is used with or without[1] the addition of the polite ending -те:—

пойдём(те) = let us go
идём(те) = let us go (along)

[1]The form without -те can be preceded by дава́йте when Pfve. (Fut.); but when the Impfve. aspect is used, the Infinitive follows: дава́йте игра́ть (= let us play!).

The 3rd pers. sing. and plur. are most commonly rendered by the word пусть or пускáй (= let!) preceding the Present or Perfective Future:—

пусть он говорúт = let him talk
пусть он скáжет = let him say

In certain expressions the form of the 2nd p. sing. Imperative is also used for the 3rd p. sing. and plur. Imperative: Не дай Бог! = God forbid! Будь онú прóкляты! May they be cursed!

The Gerunds

The *Present Gerund* or *Verbal Adverb* is formed from Imperfective verbs by adding я to the Present stem, seen in the 2nd pers. sing.:—

дéлая = doing говоря́ = speaking

but -а after *chuintantes:*

плáча = weeping

It is active in meaning and is used to indicate an action simultaneous to that of the main verb, like the Present Participle in *-ing* in English: but being an adverb in Russian, i.e. as it qualifies the verb in the clause and not the nouns, it can refer only to the *subject* of that clause. Present Gerunds in Russian can qualify a verb in any tense.

There are three irregular formations:—

даёшь, давáть давáя = giving
устаёшь but уставáя = tiring
узнаёшь but узнавáя = recognizing

A few Perfective verbs of Classes I and IV form Present Gerunds which are really past in meaning:—

войдя́ = on entering
вы́йдя = having gone out
принеся́ = having brought
увúдя = having seen
возвратя́сь = having returned
отступя́ = having stepped back, etc.

A number of verbs, mostly with monosyllabic Infinitives, have no Pres. Gerund:—

пить = drink ткать = weave
гнуть = bend лгать = tell lies

There also exists another form of the Pres. Gerund in folk poetry and peasant speech. It is formed by adding -чи to the 3rd pers. plur. of the Pres. less its final т:—

сúдячи = sitting, распевáючи = singing;
but бýдучи = being, is the *only* existing form of the Pres. Ger. from быть.

The *Past Gerund* is formed, most often from Perfective verbs, by adding -в or -вши to the Infinitive stem:—

сдéлавши = having done
читáв = reading (in the past)

Those without л in the masc. Past add -ши:—

вы́росши = having grown up

Dental stems of Class I restore the dental and add -ши: вы́ведши = having led out.

It also is Active and indicates an action previous to that of the verb which it qualifies, like the English Past Participle: having done, etc., and refers only to the subject of the clause. It is equivalent to a subordinate clause with a verb in the Past tense.

Reflexive verbs always require the full ending (в)ши to which сь is added:—

сдéлавшись = having become
переодéвшись = having changed (clothes)

Past Gerunds formed from verbs which have no Present Gerund (see above) have the *meaning* of *Present* Gerunds:

пив = drinking гнув = bending

The Participles

These are verbal adjectives in Russian and can qualify a noun in any case. Being declined like adjectives, they agree with the noun in gender, number, and case. The two passive participles have short, predicative forms as well.

The *Present Participle Active* is formed from the 3rd pers. plur. of the Present tense of Impfve. verbs

by cutting off the т and adding -щий, -щая, -щее[1]:—

де́лающий	= who is doing
лю́бящий	= who loves

The *Past Participle Active* is formed in the same way as the Past Gerund, by adding -(в)ший, -(в)шая, -(в)шее to the Infin. stem of the verb, Imperfective as well as Perfective[1]:—

чита́вший	= who has read, *or* who was reading *or* who used to read
прочита́вший	= who has read through
вы́росший	= who has grown up

The *Present Participle Passive* is formed from some Imperfective *transitive* verbs by adding -ый, -ая, -ое to the 1st pers. plur. of the Present:—

чита́емый	= being read
гони́мый	= pursued

A few verbs have the irregular ending -омый added to their consonantal stems:—

несо́мый	= being carried
иско́мый	= being looked for
ведо́мый	= being led
влеко́мый	= being drawn

Some transitive verbs have no Present Participle Passive:—

брать	= take	петь	= sing
мыть	= wash	бить	= beat, etc.

This participle is beginning to be felt as somewhat archaic and literary.

The *Past Participle Passive* is, with the Infinitive and the Present or Future, the third "principal part" of any verb, i.e. its form has to be learnt for each verb. It is formed only from transitive verbs, of course, and only general rules giving alternatives

[1]Reflexive verbs which, of course, have no passive participles, have the full ending in the Present and Past Participles, e.g.:—

интересу́ющийся	= who interests himself.
сде́лавшийся	= who has become.

can be given on its formation. It is formed mostly, but not exclusively, from Perfective verbs.

Those with Infinitives in -ать of two or more syllables add -нный, -нная, -нное to the Infin. less the -ть. Most other verbs add the endings -енный, -енная, -енное or -ённый, -ённая, -ённое to the *root* of the verb. This ending causes the "First Palatalization" in velar stems of Class I and yotation in verbs of Class IV; and the position of the stress is generally the same as in the 2nd pers. sing. of the Present:—

сде́ланный сде́лаешь	= done
полу́ченный полу́чишь	= received
жела́нный жела́ешь	= desired
подарённый подари́шь	= presented
приме́ченный приме́тишь	= noticed

Fewer verbs, mostly those with monosyllabic roots and transitive verbs in -нуть form the Past Part. Pass. by dropping the ь of the Infin. and adding the adjectival endings -ый, -ая, -ое. All verbs in -нуть, -нять and -ыть form the Past Part. Pass. in this way:—

по́нятый	= understood
мы́тый	= washed
вы́тянутый	= stretched out
на́чатый	= begun
согре́тый	= warmed

Verbal nouns can be formed from Past Participles Passive, actual—or fictitious for intransitive verbs, with the endings -ье (-ие for Pfve. verbs and literary):

де́ланье(-ние)	= doing
понима́ние	= understanding
получе́ние	= receiving, receipt
взя́тие	= taking
мытьё	= washing

Examples of the Conjugation of the two types of Verbs
1. e *type.*

нести́ = to carry(Impfve.) де́лать = to do(Impfve.)

PRESENT			
Sing. 1.	несу́ (cf.	могу́ = I can	де́лаю*
2.	несёшь	мо́жешь	де́лаешь
3.	несёт [ɲɪ'ʂot]	мо́жет ['mozɨt]	де́лает ['d̪ɛlejɪt]
Plur. 1.	несём	etc.)	де́лаем
2.	несёте		де́лаете
3.	несу́т		де́лают
IMPERATIVE			
Sing. 2.	неси́		де́лай
Plur. 2.	неси́те		де́лайте
GERUNDS			
Present	неся́		де́лая
Past	(по)нёсши		(с)де́лавши
PARTICIPLES			
Pres.Act.	несу́щий		де́лающий
Pres.Pass.	несо́мый		де́лаемый
Past Act.	нёсший		де́лавший
Past Pass.	(по)несённый		(с)де́ланный
PAST TENSE	нёс, несла́, несло́, несли́		де́лал, де́лала, де́лало, де́лали

*Consonant stem verbs of Cl. III undergo yotation throughout their Present and Imperative: пишу́, пи́шешь, etc., пиши́! = write.

2. i *type*

хвали́ть=to praise (Impfve.) сиде́ть=to sit (Impfve.)

PRESENT			
Sing.	1.	хвалю́*	сижу́*
	2.	хва́лишь	сиди́шь
	3.	хва́лит ('xvaɫɪt)	сиди́т (ʂɪ'd̪ɨt)
Plur.	1.	хва́лим	сиди́м
	2.	хва́лите	сиди́те
	3.	хва́лят	сидя́т
IMPERATIVE			
Sing.	2.	хвали́	сиди́
Plur.	2.	хвали́те	сиди́те
GERUNDS			
Present		хваля́	си́дя
Past		(по)хвали́вши	(по)сиде́вши
PARTICIPLES			
Pres. Act.		хваля́щий	сидя́щий
Pres. Pass.		хвали́мый	—
Past Act.		хвали́вший	сиде́вший
Past Pass.		хва́ленный*	(про)си́женный*
PAST TENSE			
хвали́л, хвали́ла, хвали́ло, хвали́ли			сиде́л, сиде́ла, -ло, -ли

*All i-verbs have yotation in the 1st pers. sing. Pres. and in the Past Partic. Passive.

The verb "to be" and the athematic m-verbs (Class V)

быть = to be; **дать** = to give (Pfve.); **есть** = to eat (Impfve.) (ѣсть—old spelling)

PRESENT			
Sing. 1.	(wanting)		ем
2.	(wanting)		ешь
3.	есть[1]		ест
Plur. 1.	(wanting)		еди́м
2.	(wanting)		еди́те
3.	(суть: rare)		едя́т
FUTURE			
Sing. 1.	бу́ду (reg.)	дам	
2.	бу́дешь	дашь	
3.	бу́дет	даст	
Plur. 1.	бу́дем	дади́м	
2.	бу́дете	дади́те	
3.	бу́дут	даду́т	
IMPERATIVE			
Sing. 2.	будь	дай	ешь
Plur. 2.	бу́дьте	да́йте	е́шьте
GERUNDS			
Pres.	бу́дучи		едя́
Past	бы́вши	да́вши	пое́вши
PARTICIPLES			
Pres. Act.	су́щий		едя́щий
Pres. Pass.	—		(едо́мый)
Past Act.	бы́вший	да́вший	е́вший
Past Pass.	-бы́тый	да́нный	съе́денный
PAST TENSE:			
	был, была́, бы́ло, бы́ли	дал, дала́, дало́, да́ли	ел, е́ла, е́ло, е́ли

N.B. ве́дать = to know, is a regular *e* type verb, like де́лать: Present 1st p. sing. ве́даю.

Irregular and Noteworthy verbs

1. дава́ть (= to give, Impfve.), has an irregular Present and Pres. Participle Active. All its other forms are built on the stem дава-.

Pres. Sing.	1 даю́	Imperative:	дава́й
	2 даёшь	Pres. Gerund	дава́я
	3 даёт	Past Gerund	-дава́в
Plur.	1 даём	Pres. Part. Passive	дава́емый
	2 даёте	Past Part. Active	дава́вший
	3 даю́т	Past Part. Passive	—
Pres. Part. Act.	дающий	Past Tense:	дава́л,-а, -о, -и

[1]"There is (or: are) not (or: no)" has the special form—нет + Genitive.

So also the Imperfectives: -ставáть, -знавáть, e.g. уставáть = to get tired, узнавáть = to recognize, find out.

2. хотéть (= to want)(irregular only in the Present).

Pres. Sing.	1 хочý	Plur.	1 хотúм
	2 хóчешь		2 хотúте
	3 хóчет		3 хотя́т

3. бежáть (= to run, Impfve.), also has an irregular Present:—

Pres. Sing.	1 бегý	Plur.	1 бежúм
	2 бежúшь		2 бежúте
	3 бежúт		3 бегýт

Imperat.: бегú

4. гнать (= to drive, chase, Impfve.), has a Class IV Present, Present Gerund and Participles:—

Pres. Sing.	1 гоню́	Plur.	1 гóним
	2 гóнишь		2 гóните
	3 гóнит		3 гóнят

Pres. Gerund	гоня́	Imper.	гонú
Pres. Part. Active	гоня́щий	Past	гнал, гналá
Pres. Part. Passive	гонúмый		гнáло, гнáли

Notice also the following verbs, many of which are models for verbs with similar Infinitive endings:—

Class I.

начáть	=to begin (Pfve.)	Fut.:	начнý, начнёшь	Past:	нáчал, -а, -о, -и
клясть	=to curse	Pres.:	клянý, клянёшь	"	клял, -á
жать	=to press	"	жму, жмёшь	"	жал, -а
жать	=to reap	"	жну, жнёшь	"	жал, -а
мять	=to crumple	"	мну, мнёшь	"	мял, -а
понять	=to understand (Pfve.)	Fut.	пойму́, поймёшь	"	пóнял, -á
поднять	=to lift (Pfve.)	"	подниму́, подни́мешь	"	пóдня́л, -á
умерéть	=to die (Pfve.)	"	умрý, умрёшь	"	ýмер, умерлá
забы́ть	=to forget (Pfve.)	"	забýду, забýдешь	"	забы́л, -а

(про)честь	=to read (through) (Pfve.)	Fut.:	прочтý, прочтёшь	Past:	прочёл, прочлá
класть	=to put (Impfve.)	Pres.:	кладý, кладёшь	"	клáл, -а
сесть	=to sit down (Pfve.)	Fut.:	сядý, ся́дешь	"	сел, -а
лечь	=to lie down (Pfve.)	"	ля́гу, ля́жешь	"	лёг, леглá
жечь	=to burn	Pres.:	жгу, жжёшь	"	жёг, жглá
мочь	=to be able	"	могý, мóжешь	"	мог, моглá
толóчь	=to pound	"	толкý, толчёшь	"	толóк, толклá
ушибúть	=to knock, hurt(Pfve.)	Fut.:	ушибý, ушибёшь	"	ушúб, ушúбла
грестú	=to row	Pres.:	гребý, гребёшь	"	грёб, греблá
ревéть	=to roar	"	ревý, ревёшь	"	ревéл, ревéла
жить	=to live	"	живý, живёшь	"	жил, -á
ткать	=to weave	"	тку, ткёшь	"	ткал, -а
звать	=to call	"	зовý, зовёшь	"	звал, -á

Class II.

деть	=to put carelessly	Pres.:	дéну, дéнешь	Past.:	дéл, -а
стать	=to become; start(Pfve.)	Fut.:	стáну, стáнешь		стал, -а
стыть	=to cool (intrans.)	Pres.:	сты́ну, сты́нешь		стыл, -а
достúчь	=to reach (Pfve.)	Fut.:	достúгну, достúгнешь		достúг, достúгла

Class III.

пить	=to drink	Pres.:	пью, пьёшь	"	пил, -á
		So also:	бить=to hit вить=to weave	Imper.	пей!
петь	=to sing	Pres.:	пою́, поёшь	Past:	пел, -а
мыть	=to wash	"	мóю, мóешь	"	мыл, -а
		So also:	крыть=to cover рыть =to dig		
полóть	=to weed	Pres.:	полю́, пóлешь	"	полóл, -а
колóть	=to prick	"	колю́, кóлешь	"	колóл, -а
слать	=to send	"	шлю, шлёшь	"	слал, -а
стлать	=to spread	"	стелю́, стéлешь	"	стлал, -а
ковáть	=to forge(iron)	"	кую́, куёшь	"	ковáл, -а

N.B. сметь=to dare (*regular*) Pres.: смéю, смéешь Past: смел, -а

Class IV.

спать =to sleep " сплю, спишь " спал, спят (3rd p. pl) -á

чтить =to honour " чту, чтишь " чтил, but чтут (3rd p. pl) -а

стоя́ть =to stand " стою́, стои́шь " стоя́л, -а

боя́ться=to fear " бою́сь, бои́шься " боя́лся, боя́лась

Verbs of Going and Conveying

To go (on foot):

Impfve.: идти́ Pfve.: пойти́.
Pres.: иду́, идёшь... Fut.: пойду́, пойдёшь...
Past: шёл, шла, шло, шли. пошёл, пошла́...
Imperat.: иди́... пойди́...

Freq.: ходи́ть.
Pres.: хожу́, хо́дишь...
Past: ходи́л, ходи́ла...
Imperat.: ходи́...

To go (be conveyed):

Impfve.: е́хать. Pfve.: пое́хать.
Pres.: е́ду, е́дешь... Fut.: пое́ду...
Past: е́хал, е́хала... пое́хал...
Imperat.: (none) поезжа́й...
(Impfve. *and* Pfve.)

Freq.: е́здить.
Pres.: е́зжу, е́здишь...
Past: е́здил, е́здила...
Imperat.: е́зди, -те

To come (on foot):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: приходи́ть. Pfve.: прийти́.
Pres.: прихожу́, прихо́дишь... Fut.: приду́, придёшь...
Past: приходи́л... пришёл, пришла́...
Imperat.: приходи́... приди́...

To come (conveyed):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: приезжа́ть. Pfve.: прие́хать.
Pres.: приезжа́ю, приезжа́ешь... Fut.: прие́ду...
Past: приезжа́л, приезжа́ла... прие́хал, прие́хала...

Imperat.: приезжа́й... (None)
(Impfve. *and* Pfve.)

Similarly: to go away(on foot) =уходи́ть, уйти́
to go away(conveyed)=уезжа́ть, уе́хать
to go out(on foot) =выходи́ть, вы́йти
Past!: вы́шел, вы́шла...
to go out(conveyed) =выезжа́ть, вы́ехать.

On the same scheme:—

To carry:

Impfve.: нести́. Pfve.: понести́.
Pres.: несу́, несёшь... Fut.: понесу́...
Past: нёс, несла́, несло́, несли́. понёс...
Imperat.: неси́... понеси́...

Freq.: носи́ть.
Pres.: ношу́, но́сишь...
Past: носи́л, носи́ла...
Imperat.: носи́...

To bring:

Impfve. *and* Freq.: приноси́ть. Pfve.: принести́.
Pres.: приношу́, прино́сишь... Fut.: принесу́, принесёшь...

To lead:

Impfve.: вести́. Pfve.: повести́.
Pres.: веду́, ведёшь... Fut.: поведу́...
Past: вёл, вела́, вело́, вели́. повёл...
Imperat.: веди́... поведи́...

Freq.: води́ть.
Pres.: вожу́, во́дишь...
Past: води́л, води́ла...
Imperat.: води́...

To bring (a person):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: приводи́ть. Pfve.: привести́.
Pres.: привожу́, приво́дишь... Fut.: приведу́, приведёшь...

To convey:

Impfve.: везти́. Pfve.: повезти́.
Pres.: везу́, везёшь... Fut.: повезу́...
Past: вёз, везла́, везло́, везли́. повёз...

Imperat.: везй... повезй...
Freq.: возйть.
Pres.: вожу́, вбзишь...
Past: возйл, возйла...
Imperat.: возй...

To bring (in a vehicle):
Impfve. *and* Freq.: привозйть.
Pres.: привожу́, привбзишь...
Pfve.: привезтй.
Fut.: привезу́, привезёшь...

TEXTS

(The first two passages are given in the old spelling for comparison with other Slavonic languages.)

I.
Отъ Луки, VIII.

5. вышелъ сѣятель сѣять сѣмя свое; и когда онъ сѣялъ, иное упало при дорогѣ и было потоптано, и птицы небесныя поклевали его;

6. а иное упало на камень и взошедъ засохло, потому что не имѣло влаги;

7. а иное упало между терніемъ, и выросло терніе и заглушило его;

8. а иное упало на добрую землю и взошедъ принесло плодъ сторичный. Сказавъ сіе, возгласилъ: кто имѣетъ уши слышать, да слышитъ.

II.
А.С. Пушкинъ.

Пророкъ

Духовной жаждою томимъ,
Въ пустынѣ мрачной я влачился,
И шестикрылый Серафимъ
На перепутьи мнѣ явился;
Перстами легкими какъ сонъ
Моихъ зѣницъ коснулся онъ:
Отверзлись вѣщія зѣницы,
Какъ у испуганной орлицы.
Моихъ ушей коснулся онъ,
И ихъ наполнилъ шумъ и звонъ:

И внялъ я неба содроганье,
И горній ангеловъ полётъ,
И гадъ морскихъ подводный ходъ,
И дольней лозы прозябанье.
И онъ къ устамъ моимъ приникъ,
И вырвалъ грѣшный мой языкъ,
И празднословный и лукавый,
И жало мудрыя змѣи
Въ уста замершія мои
Вложилъ десницею кровавой.
И онъ мнѣ грудь разсѣкъ мечемъ,
И сердце трепетное вынулъ,
И угль, пылающій огнемъ,
Во грудь отверстую водвинулъ.
Какъ трупъ въ пустынѣ я лежалъ,
И Бога гласъ ко мнѣ возвалъ:
"Возстань, Пророкъ, и виждь и внемли,
Исполнись волею моей,
И обходя моря и земли,
Глаголомъ жги сердца людей."

III.
Ф. Достоевский.

Дагестанских татар было трое и все они были родные братья. Два из них были уже пожилые, но третий, Алей, был не более двадцати двух лет, а на вид ещё моложе. Его место на нарах было рядом со мною. Его прекрасное, открытое, умное и в то же время добродушно-наивное лицо с первого взгляда привлекло к нему моё сердце, и я так рад был, что судьба послала мне его, а не другого кого-нибудь в соседи. Вся душа его выражалась на его красивом, можно даже сказать прекрасном лице. Улыбка его была так доверчива, так детски простодушна; большие чёрные глаза были так мягки, так ласковы, что я всегда чувствовал особое удовольствие, даже облегчение в тоске и в грусти, глядя на него.

IV.
А.А. Фет.

Сядем здесь, у этой ивы.
Что за чудные извивы
На коре вокруг дупла!
А под ивой—как красивы
Золотые переливы
Струй дрожащего стекла!

Ветви сочные дугою
Перегнулись над водою,

Как зелёный водопад;
Как живые, как иглою,
Будто споря меж собою,
Листья воду бороздят.

В этом зеркале под ивой
Уловил мой глаз ревнивый
Сердцу милые черты...
Мягче взор твой горделивый...
Я дрожу, глядя, счастливый,
Как в воде дрожишь и ты...

V.
Семен Кирсанов.

Станция "Маяковская"

На новом
радиусе
у рельс метро—
я снова
радуюсь,
мне так светло!

Шел поезд
издали,
тоннель шумней—
он ярко
высветлил
всю душу мне.

Я будто еду
путем
сквозным
в стихи
к поэту,
на встречу с ним.
Я сердце
вымчал,
взволнован весь,
к Владим Владимчу—
и вот он
здесь.

Встает
живей еще
тоннелем вдаль
слов
нержавеющих
живая сталь,

слова
не замерли
его руки,
прожилки мрамора—
черновики!

Тут—
в сводах каменных,
лучами в тьму,
подземный
памятник
стоит—
ему!
Не склеп,
не статуя,
не истукан,
а слава
статная
его стихам!

Тоннель
прорезывая,
увидим мы:
его поэзия
живёт
людьми,
он не износится
и в долгий
срок—
согретый
множеством
горячих щек,
он
не исплеснится,
смотрите—
там—
по строчкам—
лестницам
он сходит
сам,
идет,
задумавшись,
в подземный дом—
в ладонях
юноши
любимый том.

Пусть рельсы
тянутся
на сотни лет!
Товарищ станция,

зеленый
свет!
Землёй
московскою
на все пути—
стих
Маяковского,
свети,
свети!

SECTION 2. UKRAINIAN

INTRODUCTION

The Ukrainians are the descendants of the South West branch of the East Slavs.

Only since the Second World War have the fertile, but often ravaged, broad lands of the Ukraine been united within one frontier in the Ukrainian S.S.R. (Beyond its borders Ukrainians are to be found in Dobruja, Hungary, Poland, Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, on the Don and Lower Volga, in the Kazakh S.S.R., in Siberia, and in large numbers in North America.) This land, noted throughout Russia for its cheerful and attractive songs, has a language whose musicality and flexibility can vie with its most beautiful sisters in the West and South Slav groups. Ukrainian is a more "popular" form of East Slav than Russian—it has less borrowings from Church Slavonic, using forms like солóдкий for "sweet", and not liking words like главá for "chapter" (Ukr. рóздiл); and at the same time it has more borrowings from Western Europe, chiefly via Polish.

Modern literary Ukrainian is founded mainly on the dialect of the Middle Dniepr region south of Kiev (the "south-eastern" dialect, according to the modern division of the dialects).

It has a common origin with Russian, in that Old Russian, the language of the non-ecclesiastical documents of Kievan Rus' up to its destruction by the Tatars in 1240, is the common ancestor of both—and indeed of Byelorussian as well. Thus it can be claimed that many of the oldest works of Russian literature also belong among the oldest examples of literature in Ukrainian, and indeed they do geographically. The other parent of these literatures is, of course, Church Slavonic, which remained the official literary and ecclesiastical language in Ukraine as long as it did in Russia proper. And so it can be said that most of the oldest literature of Ukraine is in Church Slavonic. The earliest MSS., however, from the Kíev and Chernígov regions, dating from the eleventh century, and from Galicia dating from the twelfth century, already show Ukrainian characteristics in their language.

Ukraine suffered a different fate and underwent different cultural influences from her northern and eastern neighbour, Russia proper. In 1321, after a short period of independence for the principality of Galicia-Volhynia in the West, which had no ties with

the surviving Great Russian centres of Nóvgorod, Súzdal', and Ryazán', most of the Ukrainian lands were taken over by Lithuania, whose official language was Western Russian (a form of Old Byelorussian mixed with Church Slavonic). Private documents of Ukrainian origin from this period do, however, show Ukrainian linguistic features. In 1569, Lithuania was united to Poland by the Union of Lublin; and thus all the Ukrainian territories came under Poland. It is to this period, which lasted for the western territories up to the first partition of Poland in 1772, that Ukrainian owes most of its more superficial differences from Russian, such as its differences of vocabulary. By coming under Poland, Ukraine also felt the influence of the Reformation and of the West more strongly than Russia. Efforts were made to translate Church books into the living, popular language of that time. Through the influence of the Polish language and the Roman Catholic Church many expressions from Latin and West European languages entered Ukrainian. This is already noticeable in the so-called (comic) "Interludes" to the religious plays written and performed in Ukraine from the seventeenth century. The "Interludes" were intentionally written in the local popular language, in contrast to the Church Slavonic of the more serious parts, and were the first examples of written popular Ukrainian. Various kinds of verse, satirical, historical, lyric, and even religious, were also written in this language. On the other hand, consciously Ukrainian leading figures, who wished to resist the polonization of the Ukrainian upper classes and to preserve the national and cultural individuality of their people and their Orthodox faith, cultivated and perfected the use of Church Slavonic as a weapon in the struggle.

In 1648, as a reaction against Polish oppression, the eastern part of the Ukrainian lands under the leadership of Bohdán Khmel'nýts'ky rebelled against Poland and later offered their allegiance to the Orthodox Czar Alexis of Moscow. For a time after this they enjoyed a certain amount of autonomy, the recollection of which bore its fruits in the literary products of the end of the eighteenth and of the nineteenth centuries. By this time Ukrainian was already to a very large extent a distinct and separate language from Russian. Its literature, largely polemical in content, however, gave only the poorest reflection of it, being couched in a clumsy jargon, or mixture of Ukrainian, Byelorussian, Polish, and Church Slavonic elements, known later as "язичіе" and surviving into the eighteenth century.

The efforts at writing in the popular language culminated in the works of Iván Kotl'arévs'ky (b. in Poltava in 1769, d. in 1838), whose travesty of Virgil's *Aeneid*, "Енеїда," and operetta "Наталка Полтавка" are generally recognized as the first successful and "classical" works in Ukrainian, such as we know it to-day.

However, in those days Ukrainian was still not generally recognized as a separate language; and Josef Dobrovský, the Czech scholar and the father of modern Slavonic studies, persisted until his death in refusing to admit it as anything more than a dialect of Russian.

The first works of Kotl'arévs'ky were originally published in a Russian spelling, as was also Shevchenko's collection of poems "Кобзар" later, in 1840. The nineteenth century saw a succession of efforts to evolve for Ukrainian an orthography and alphabet of its own, distinct from both Church Slavonic and Russian. The historical spelling of Maksymóvych for various reasons did not generally take root, although it influenced the spelling used in Transcarpathian Ukraine until quite recently. It was finally replaced by the кулішівка, the alphabet based on a modification of the Russian гражданка and evolved by Panteleymón Kulísh (1819-97), the nationalist poet, novelist, historian, ethnographer, and translator of the Bible and Shakespeare, whose tireless work did so much to establish Ukrainian as a literary language with a scientific basis. His grammar of Ukrainian first appeared in 1857. His spelling broadly followed the "phonetic" principle of one letter per sound.

In literature the reputation of Ukrainian was established by the poetry of Tarás Shevchénko (1814-69), the son of a serf, who at the same time as several other members of the "Slavophil" Society of SS. Cyril and Methodius, was banished by the Czar in 1846 to serve as a common soldier in Central Asia[1] and forbidden to write or paint for ten years. Some of his poems secretly written in exile and filled with a love for his native Ukraine and its people, reach great heights of touching beauty. His longer poems recall the past glories of the free Ukraine in the seventeenth century. He was a conscious Slavophil as well as a Ukrainian patriot, and deliberately wrote in the popular Ukrainian of his time, enriched by borrowings from Church Slavonic such as would be comprehensible to other Slavs. Later writers avoided borrowings from

[1]Orsk, Mangeshlak, by the Aral Sea.

Church Slavonic and followed the popular language more completely, which is the main reason why modern Ukrainian has far fewer borrowings from Church Slavonic than modern Russian has.

After Shevchénko there followed a steady stream of distinctively national writers, such as the woman novelist Márko Vovchók (Marija Markóvychka, 1834-1907); the lyric poet and fabulist, Leoníd Hlíbov (1827-93); the lyric poet and satirist, Stepán Rudáns'ky (1833-73); Oleksánder Konýs'ky (1836-1900)—poet, writer of short stories, critic, and biographer of Shevchénko; and many others.

But the Ukrainian language was not allowed to evolve smoothly under the Czars, who regarded its development as an effort to tear away Ukraine from Russia. In 1863, Ukrainian was forbidden as a language of instruction in schools; and in 1876 printing and publishing in proper Ukrainian was forbidden altogether within the Russian Empire. The ukase promulgating this was a secret one, so that the Russian public learned of it only some years later from an article in the *Revue des deux mondes*. Only books and texts in Ukrainian printed entirely in Russian spelling were allowed. This spelling the Ukrainians humorously nicknamed "ярижка", "the messenger boy's spelling."

The result was that many leading Ukrainian intellectuals and writers of the time emigrated abroad. The chief cultural centre of Ukrainians became L'viv (L'vov) in Galicia, by then inherited through the partitions of Poland, by Austro-Hungary. The language of Galicia was more strongly influenced by Polish and also had certain features of its own, which émigrés from Eastern Ukraine began to take over during their exile.

One of the greatest Ukrainians of that time, Mykháylo Drahománov (1841-95), the ethnographer and professor of Kíev University, had to emigrate, and taught for a time in Sófia, Bulgaria, and later worked in Geneva. He at first advocated the use of the Latin alphabet for Ukrainian and later a more phonetic spelling in Cyrillic. But neither of these schemes were accepted by the mass of his countrymen, though his humanistic ideas in a broader field had a great influence on the Galician poet Iván Frankó (1856-1916), Ukraine's second great national poet.

The official attitude towards Ukrainian in Russia at that time was that of questioning the very existence of an independent Ukrainian language. As late as 1896, one of the big encyclopedias, that of Брокгаус and Ефрон, as if refusing to recognize Ukrainian as a separate language, calls it in the title of its article on it "The Little Russian dialect of the Russian

language" (малороссійское нарѣчіе русскаго языка).

In 1905, the ban in Russia on the use of Ukrainian was lifted with the introduction of the new constitution; and Kíev again became the cultural centre of Ukraine. The language of Dniepr Ukraine then again definitely took the ascendancy as the basis of literary Ukrainian. Two years later, in 1907, Borýs Hrinchénko was able to publish his authoritative Ukrainian-Russian dictionary, which is still regarded as a basic work to this day.

With the establishment of the Soviet régime, the Ukrainians, like other nationalities, gained a cultural and administrative independence in the Ukrainian S.S.R., such as they had not known before. An All-Ukrainian Academy of Sciences had been established, one of whose tasks was the development of the Ukrainian language and the final settling of questions of orthography. In this task the Ukrainian academicians invited and obtained the coöperation of Ukrainian scholars and linguists living outside the (then) boundaries of the Soviet Union. Thus the Ukrainians of Galicia and Subcarpathian Russia worked with them for the complete unification of the Ukrainian language on the basis of the language of Kíev and of Great or Dniepr Ukraine. The goal was achieved not without some struggles and sacrifices, but finally those in favour of a form of language not deliberately differentiated from the closely-allied Russian language won the day. Unlike Russian, Ukrainian did not undergo any radical spelling reform after the Revolution. Apart from a spate of neologisms, Ukrainian continued to change only slowly, by evolution.

In 1927, a new edition of B. Hrinchénko's Ukrainian-Russian dictionary was published under the editorship of S. Yefrémov and A. Nikóvs'ky.

The principles which guided the composition of the Ukrainian Orthography ("Український Правопис"), published in Kíev in 1946, may serve as a fitting conclusion to what was in the past an often unhappy and stormy struggle for development and as a remarkable example of wisdom in solving (in the very turmoil of war) what has long been a delicate and painful question. As in the Second World War, in this case too, the Ukrainians clearly decided not to break away from their Russian brothers in the Soviet Union. The guiding principles were the following:—

1. To decide on a practical orthography, keeping to what has already been established, and not compelling the educated masses of the country to re-learn their orthographical rules.

2. To preserve the popular basis of the orthography, i.e. its nearness to the pronunciation of the people in the widest sense.
3. To be guided in all important points of phonetics, morphology, etc., by the writings of the best writers of the past and present.
4. In matters of orthography, shared by their nature with other languages (e.g. punctuation, the use of capitals, hyphens, etc.), to ensure uniformity with the orthographies of the brother peoples of the Soviet Union, especially the Russians, being guided by the latest plan drawn up by the State Commission.
5. To avoid as far as possible variants in spelling.
6. To reduce to a minimum the number of exceptions to rules.
7. In formulating rules, to be guided by the level of understanding of people with full elementary education.
8. To give historical explanations to rules, in the form of notes, without sacrificing scientific accuracy to ease of understanding, but at the same time without going into excessive detail and highly specialized explanations.

A prominent member of the Ukrainian Academy of Sciences and the Minister of Education of the Ukrainian S.S.R. largely responsible for this "Правóпис" was the well-known poet, Pavló Tychýna (Павлó Тичи́на), one of the numerous writers of Ukraine who should be more widely known abroad. Another great poet and academician was Maksým Rýl's'ky (Макси́м Ри́льський), whose development from neo-classicism to Soviet modernism any student from the West will find interesting to follow.

In the Second World War Ukraine suffered and was devastated as terribly as any land in Europe, and her people were stirred to superhuman efforts. These will doubtless leave their traces in subsequent Ukrainian literature and in the development of the language. The student can but be encouraged to explore the new literature and keep his mind sympathetic and receptive.

THE UKRAINIAN ALPHABET

Ukrainian		*Approximate English equivalent*
А	а	(more open and forward than) *ah*
Б	б	*b* (unaspirated)
В	в	*v*[1] (*w* after vowels, see Pronunciation)
Г	г[2]	voiced *h* (see Pronunciation)
Д	д	*d* (dental)
Е	е	*e* in "bet"
Є	є	*ye* in "yet"
Ж	ж	*zh*, *s* in "pleasure" (hard)
З	з	*z*
И	и	*i* in "it" with tongue further back (see Pronunciation)
І	і	*ee* in "meet"
Ї	ї	*ye* in "ye"
Й	й	*y* in "boy", *y* in "yet"
К	к	*k*
Л	л	*l* in both "leaf" and "table"
М	м	*m*
Н	н	*n*
О	о	*o* in "for"
П	п	*p* (unaspirated)
Р	р	*r* rolled
С	с	*s* in "see"
Т	т	*t* (dental)
У	у	*oo* in "boot"
Ф	ф	*f*
Х	х	*ch* in "loch"
Ц	ц	*ts* pronounced together as in "bits"
Ч	ч	hard *ch*, as in "church" with tongue further back
Ш	ш	*sh* (hard)
Щ	щ	*shch* in "Ashchurch" (hard)
Ю	ю	*u* in "tune", "you"
Я	я	"yah"
(Ь)	ь[3]	sign of palatalization or "softness" written after consonants

[1]Often pronounced bilabially.

[2]Until recently, after Г, г followed Ґ, ґ, pronounced "hard" *g* as in English "go" and like Russian Г, г. It occurred mostly in words of foreign origin and has now been abolished, г being used instead in Soviet Ukraine, even though the pronunciation is [g] in such words. Ґ, ґ is still used by Ukrainians in emigration.

[3]In older dictionaries Ь, ь came after щ.

The apostrophë ' is used between a hard labial consonant or sometimes a hard *r* or *k* and a yotated vowel, also after prefixes ending in a consonant before a yotated vowel, to indicate a yot sound (English *y* in "yet"), like ъ or, formerly, the apostrophë in Russian. e.g.:—

п'ять = five пір'я = feathers
б'ю = I beat з'єднáти = to unite
Лук'ян = Lucian

The peculiarly Ukrainian letters are: Є, є, Ї, ї (and formerly Ґ, ґ). І, і occurs now only in Byelorussian as well.

Old Slavonic letters not used in Ukrainian are: ѕ, ѣ, ѹ, ѡ, ѣ, ѣі, ѣ, ѣ, ѧ, ѫ, ѣѧ, ѣѫ, ξ, ψ, θ, υ.

Russian letters not used in Ukrainian are: Ё, ё; ъ; ы; Э, э.

Serbian letters absent from Ukrainian are, of course: Ђ, ђ, Ј, ј, Љ, љ, Ѣ, ѣ, Ћ, ћ, Ц, ц.

The Macedonian letters Ѓ, ѓ, Ќ, ќ and S, s, are also unknown to Ukrainian.

дж and дз, although representing single sounds (English *j* and *dz* respectively) in uncompounded words, are not regarded as separate letters. Thus in the dictionaries джерелó (= spring, source) and дзвін (= bell) both come under д in the usual alphabetical order.

PRONUNCIATION

The pronunciation of literary Ukrainian is fairly faithfully portrayed in its orthography with the few exceptions noted below. But the accent is not indicated, which causes difficulty to foreigners, as in Russian.

The *Accent* in Ukrainian is a not very strong stress accent, which may fall on *any* syllable of a word and is "free", i.e. it may shift from one syllable to another in the course of flexion, e.g.:—

робúти = to do, work плечé = shoulder
роблю́ = I work, but—
but— на плéчах = on (his) shoulders
рóбиш = you (sg.) work

The accent in Ukrainian is not always in the same position as in the corresponding word in Russian, e.g.:—

малúй = small, Russ. мáлый
старúй = old, Russ. стáрый

All the *Consonants*, including the *chuintantes* ж, ч, ш, щ, have hard (or ordinary) and soft (or palatalized) versions. They are hard before the vowels а, е, и, о, у and before another hard consonant or finally. They (singly or in whole groups[1]) are soft before the "soft" vowels є, і, ю, and я and when ь is written after them, which in Ukrainian occurs only after the dentals д, т, з, с, ц, н and л. Thus:—

мить (= moment) is pronounced with a hard *m*: mɨtʲ

but—

мій (= my) is pronounced with a soft mʲ: mʲij

л is *hard* in ласкáвий (= friendly) and лунá (=echo)[2]

but—

it is soft in лíто (= summer)

р is hard in мóре (= sea)

but—

it is soft in рясний (= rich, abundant) and мóря (Gen. sg. = of the sea)

Similarly—

к	is hard in	кúслий = sour,	but soft in	кінь = horse
т	"	ти = you, thou	"	"	тютю́н = tobacco
г	"	горá = hill	"	"	гіркúй = bitter
с	"	сóром = shame	"	"	сьогóдні = to-day
ц	"	цúган = gipsy	"	"	цíлий = whole; and— пáлець = finger

N.B.—In Ukrainian a soft ц survives, e.g. пáлець.[3]

All the *chuintantes*, including ч and щ, in contrast to Russian, are hard in Ukrainian, hence чай (= tea) sounds more like Serbocroatian ʧaj (čaj) than Russian ʧæj (čaj). But before i a softer version is heard, as in жíнка (= woman), шість (= six), щíтка (= brush), слухачí (= listeners).

[1] E.g. in сніг both с and н are soft, pron. sʲniɦ.

[2] Before е and и a medium l is pronounced, like in English 'let': лéдве = hardly, phon. ˈlɛdvɛ, лис = fox.

[3] Scholars now consider that only the soft dentals dʲ, tʲ, nʲ, lʲ, and also j in Ukrainian are true palatal consonants, whereas soft *chuintantes*, labials and velars are 'half soft', and soft sʲ, zʲ, ʦʲ, ʤʲ, rʲ and *long* ʒʲ, ʃʲ, ʧʲ are 'palatalized'.

ь is also no longer written after the *chuintantes* finally: ніч(= night), дощ (= rain). After the dentals named above it occurs medially as well as finally, as in сядьте (= sit down!), сьогодні (= to-day).

In contrast to Russian single labials are soft only before i. Finally they are always hard: голуб (= pigeon), степ (=steppe), кров (= blood), сім(= seven). Before я, ю, ї and є they are always followed by ' representing a yot sound unless they are preceded by some other consonant belonging to the root (except р); hence б'є (= he beats), м'який (= soft); свято (= holiday), but верб'я (= willows), and with prefix: зв'язати (= to bind together).

Soft р at the end of words and syllables, although heard in eastern Ukrainian, is not literary; hence the spellings—тепер (= now), тюрма (= prison). It occurs medially before soft (yotated) vowels: рябий = variegated, but in пір'я = feathers, the *r* is hard before the yot, phon. ˈɣirja.

л before soft ц is pronounced soft, as in галці = jackdaw (Dat., Loc. s.), спілці = union (D., L.s.).

в has a third pronunciation besides the hard and soft versions noted above, namely that of English *w* or glide *u* (u̯) after (tautosyllabic) vowels both finally and medially before other consonants. This also applies to most initial в's in consonant groups after a preceding word ending in a vowel. This pronunciation occurs regularly and is not properly indicated by the orthography. (Cf. Slovenian, Slovak, Lusatian and Byelorussian.) Thus:—

жив	= he lived	is pronounced	ʒɨu̯
правда	= truth	"	ˈprau̯da
вона впала	= she fell	"	voˈna u̯ˈpała
also written вона упала.			

(Compare the similar treatment of initial і described below under Vowels.)

(Hard л is pronounced as in Russian, with the tip of the tongue flattened against the front upper teeth and pointing downward and the front of the tongue spread and arched towards the hard palate, cf. English *l* in "table".)

Soft т and д are slightly sibilant as in central Russia.

Final voiced consonants remain voiced, e.g.:—

дід	= grandfather	ніж	= knife
скарб	= treasure	нарід	= people

but in western Ukrainian they may become unvoiced, e.g.:—

сад батьків (= the orchard of his parents) can be pronounced сат батьків.

Within a word or word group regressive assimilation takes place only if the second of two consonants is voiced. Thus:—

прóсьба	= request	is pronounced	прóзьба
боротьбá	= struggle	"	бородьбá
вокзáл	= railway terminus	"	воґзáл
хоч би	= at least	"	ходж би

Ukrainian г is pronounced like *h* in Czech and Slovak, i.e. like a *voiced h*, phon. ɦ. But the *unvoiced* counterpart of ɦ is x, as in Czech (and Slovak), e.g. Bůh, pron. buːx (= God) and Gen. sg. Boha, pron. 'boɦa. Thus легкий (= light) is pronounced lɛx'kɨj, and нігті (= nails) is pronounced ˈɲixtɨ.

ґ used to be used to represent a hard [g], still so pronounced mostly in borrowed words such as ґрати (= grating), ґедзь (= gadfly), ґуля (= knob), ґанок (= porch, balcony).

Certain consonants can be written double and pronounced long, namely:—

н	as in	бажання	= desire, wish,	pron.	baˈʒaɲɲa
		здоровенний	= "great big"		
		панна	= maiden		
т	" "	життя	= life	"	ʒɨˈtʲtʲa[1]
д	" "	підборіддя	= chin	"	ɲidboˈɲiddʲa[1]
ч	" "	Туреччина	= Turkey	"	

also л, з, с, ц, ж, and ш, mostly before the neut. noun ending -я.

The *Vowels*. From what has already been said above the reader will see that in Ukrainian, as in Russian, the pronunciation of consonants is inextricably bound up with the pronunciation of the vowels that follow, though the reverse is less true in literary Ukrainian.

Vowel letters indicating that the preceding consonant is not palatalized are: а, е, и, о, у, to which correspond the soft palatalizing vowels: я, є, і, ї, йо, ьо, ю. These soft vowels, when occurring initially in words and syllables, begin with a full yot sound, e.g.:—

[1]The combination of soft dental + *j* + vowel, as in Russian коренья (= spices), житьё (= life), is impossible in Ukrainian.

я pron. ja = I
має " 'majε = he has

i is then written ї, as in:—

ї́ї pron. ji'ji = her

The sound *jo* (йо, ьо), like *ya* in English 'yawn' and corresponding to the Russian ё, is rare initially; it occurs, however, in the 3rd person Personal Pronoun, for example, and is then written йо: його́ (= him). йо occurs medially mostly in foreign words: серйо́зний (= serious), but also after vowels as in чийо́го (= whose, Gen. s. m.), etc. ьо is written after consonants: льон = flax, всього́ = of all.

є rarely occurs after consonants, except in adjectives, e.g. синє (= blue, Nom. sg. neut.). It occurs mostly initially in words and syllables after vowels and also after ' (the apostrophë): e.g. єднати = to unite, має = has, б'є = strikes (vb.).

In literary Ukrainian there is no obligatory modification of unstressed vowels comparable to that in Great Russian. Stressed or unstressed, the vowels may retain the same quality in careful speech.[1]

а has a flat, open sound, as in Russian. я represents the same sound preceded by *j* or palatalization.

е is open, as in English "bet" (preceded by a *hard* consonant!). It is a pure vowel in contrast to the Russian э (q.v.). є represents the same sound, perhaps a little more closed, preceded by *j* or palatalization.

и is a sound of the type of Russian ы and the Polish *y*, but the tip of the tongue is more forward than in Russian. This makes it more similar to Polish *y*, and like the latter it is not diphthongal. The soft vowel corresponding to и is і, which is like *i* in English "machine"; it always causes palatalization of the preceding consonant; initially in words and syllables it can occur as ї.[2]

[1] In normal quicker speech, unstressed о before a syllable with у can be pronounced more closed and then approaches у, e.g. кожу́х = sheepskin coat, зозу́ля = cuckoo. Unstressed е can approach и, especially before syllables with и, у and і: e.g. in неси́! = carry!, несу́ = I carry. Similarly unstressed и can approach е in pronunciation, especially before syllables with е and а, e.g. живе́ = (he) lives, жила́ = she lived. Interpalatal, centralised varieties of а and у can also be heard.

[2] But: і́нший = other, і́ноді = sometimes, etc.

о is similar to the English *o* in "for". It has less initial lip-rounding than in Russian, and never changes to а or е. The corresponding soft sound is always rendered by two letters, either ьо or йо (see above).

у is pronounced with considerable lip-rounding as in Russian. ю represents the same sound preceded by *j* or palatalization.

й represents the *i*-glide (j̯) after, or yot before, vowels, as in його́ (= him) and мій (= my). Initial і is reduced to й in connected speech when preceded by a word ending in a vowel, e.g. він іде́ (= he is going), but вона́ йде́ (= she is going), or він не йде́ (= he is not going). The same applies to і (= and), which is not syllabic after a vowel; hence one writes and says Ори́на й Мари́на, but Іва́н і Мари́на.

Vowel Alternations

As і represents etymologically in many cases a former о or е in closed syllables after the loss of a subsequent semi-vowel, we have і alternating with о and е in the roots of words in the course of declensions. These, by adding a final vowel, cause the preceding (originally closed) syllable to become an open one, e.g.:—

i/o кінь = horse, Gen. sg. коня́
ніч = night, " " но́чі
мій = my, Nom. sg. masc., but моя́ Nom. sg. *fem.*, etc.

also—
слів = of words, is the Gen.pl. of сло́во
сіль = salt, has Instr. sg. сі́ллю but Gen. sg. со́лі, etc.

and—
робітни́к = workman, from робо́та = work

Initially в is added, e.g.:—
ове́с = oats, Gen. sg. вівса́

i/e сім = seven, Gen. sg. семи́
о́сінь = autumn, " " о́сені

Similarly—
сільськи́й = of the village (adj.), from село́

Many words with "polnoglasie", such as мо́лот (= hammer), or those derived from words with former vocalic liquids or with ъ or ь as semi-vowels, such as торг (= bargaining, trade), or сон, Gen. sg. сну (= sleep) from сънъ, and день, Gen. sg. дня (= day) from дьнь, do not undergo this change in closed syllables. (But this does not apply to Genitive plural

forms: голова́ = head, G.pl. голі́в; доро́га = road, G.pl. доріг; сльоза́ = tear, G.pl. сліз.)

Foreign words, too, do not know it, e.g. до́ктор (= doctor), студе́нт (= student).

(The fill-vowels o and e in closed syllables also do not alternate with i.)

Sometimes analogy causes either the retention or the non-appearance of i where it might be expected: кіне́ць = end, Gen.sing. кінця́, зе́лень = verdure, Gen. sing. зе́лені.

THE UKRAINIAN DIALECTS

The modern division of the Ukrainian dialects is into three groups: (i) the Northern, (ii) the South-Western, and (iii) the South-Eastern.

The western frontier of the Northern dialects runs south from a point a little north of Brest to Volodymyr-Volyns'ky in Volhynia. From these points the Northern dialects stretch in a relatively narrow belt running E.S.E. south of Pinsk to Chornobyl' at the mouth of the Prypyat' on the Kiev 'inland sea' or reservoir, actually the Dniepr. East of the Dniepr their territory includes Chernihiv, Novhorod-Sivers'ky and Ryl's'k. Their southern boundary runs just south of Luts'k, Rovno, Novohrad-Volyns'ky and Fastiv (and north of Zhytomyr), then across the Dniepr about 50 kilometres south of Kiev to Pereyaslav-Khmel'nyts'ky, and then north-east to the east of Pryluky, Konotop and Ryl's'k. There is a small enclave of northern dialects to the south-west, south, south-east and east of Ostrogozhs'k, bordering in the south on the area of the south-eastern dialects.

The Northern dialects fall into three main groups: (1) the Volhynian subdialects, (2) to their east those of the west bank of the Dniepr, and (3) those of the east bank of the Dniepr.

The boundary between the South-Western and the South-Eastern dialects runs south from Fastiv, through Stavyshche, Tal'ne to Pervomays'k and then roughly south-west to a point just north of Tyraspol' in Moldavia.

The South-Eastern dialects stretch east of this line across the Dniepr and the steppes in the south, in the north to just south of Sudzha and Belgorod in Russian territory to Bohuchar and Morozovs'k (beyond the boundaries of the Ukrainian S.S.R.) and to beyond Luhans'k and Taganrog in the south-east. Their southern boundary is formed by the shores of the Sea of Azov and the Black Sea and include Kherson and Odessa. The Crimea, however, is not, in the main, Ukrainian-speaking territory. But a large region to the east of

the Sea of Azov is of mixed Russian-Ukrainian population as far south as Krasnodar, the middle point of the southern boundary. The eastern boundary of this area runs roughly south from the town of Azov to meet it east of Krasnodar.

The South-Eastern dialects are subdivided into four main groups: (1) the Middle Dniepr region subdialects, (2) the subdialects of the Poltava region, (3) the subdialects of Slobozhanshchyna to their east, (4) the subdialects of the vast steppe region to the south on both sides of the Dniepr, between the Dniestr and (nearly) the Don.

The western boundary of the South-Western dialects runs S.S.W. from Volodymyr-Volyns'ky, west of Nemyriv and Sambir to Uzhhorod. Their southern boundary runs first roughly in an arc bulging southward, to the south of Mukachevo, Rakhiv and Chernivtsi up to Mohyliv-Podil's'ky. From there it runs S.S.E., to the west of Balta to a point a little north of Tyraspol'.

The subdivisions of the South-Western dialects are the most complicated: (1) the whole of the northern part is covered by the Volhynian subdialects; south of these (2) in the west one finds the subdialects of the upper Dniestr, including the L'viv region, as far east as Husyatyn; on the extreme west of these are (3) the Syan River subdialects running in a narrow strip from Nemyriv as far as Sambir; (4) to the east are the subdialects of Podolia. The Carpathian region has four subdivisions: (5) the Northern Carpathian, (6) the trans-Carpathian region to the south, (7) the Western Carpathian (Lemky) region in Slovakia, (8) the Hucul' region in the east. (9) To the east of this are the subdialects of the Bukovina-Kuty region round Chernivtsi.

Modern literary Ukrainian is based mainly on the South-Eastern, Middle Dniepr and Poltava dialects with a considerable contribution, mainly lexical, from the South-Western dialects. The south-western region played an important role for Ukrainian particularly after the fall of Kíev in 1240, in the seventeenth century, and during the persecution of the language under the Russian czars in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries (see Introduction). However, their most characteristic phonetic (e.g. и pronounced close [ę]) and morphological features (such as a conjugated past tense with personal endings, e.g. мавем for я мав (cf. Polish)) were not accepted in the literary language.

A feature of all forms of Ukrainian popular speech is the avoidance of the sound f (ф), admitted —only in foreign words—in literary Ukrainian. In the

popular speech it is replaced mostly by хв (pron. x^w), while в after vowels before voiceless consonants becomes *w* as usual (not *f* as in Russian). Many dialects also preserve the dual endings for feminine and neuter nouns after the numbers 2, 3 and 4, a feature no longer preserved in the literary language.

The Northern dialects have various vowels and diphthongs for what is in the literary language the i alternating with o or e, including the diphthong u̯o, as in Slovak, e.g. кубнь (= horse), while the i derived from ѣ of the literary language is replaced by ie, je, ji, and even e in unstressed positions, e.g. ліес (= a wood), сjéно (= hay), дjíўка (= girl), бежи́ть (= runs). They also have prepalatalizing i for literary и, and unstressed o can become u (y) as in Bulgarian, e.g. муí (for мой) (= my, Nom. plur.).

The Carpathian dialects unvoice final voiced consonants, as in Polish, Russian, etc., distinguish original ы and и, as in Russian and Byelorussian, and alternate various vowels other than i with e and o.

Other dialects in the various groups have only one (medium) *l*, as in Czech and Serbocroätian, a hard ц, and a р (r) hard in all positions.

South-Eastern Ukrainian, which is taken as the basis of the literary language, has more features in common with Russian. South-Western Ukrainian, on the other hand, is much more strongly influenced by Polish, as one would expect, and with its dialects, forms, in some ways, a transition to that language. Thus in phonetics, soft *s* and *z* in Western Ukrainian approach Polish *ś* and *ź*. In vocabulary Western Ukrainian has more borrowings from Polish. Thus one can hear перепрóшую for "I beg your pardon", cf. Polish przepraszam. The influence of Polish culture and language has left traces on the whole of the Ukrainian language, thereby differentiating it further from Russian, which has fewer traces of Polish.

VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING

As in other Slavonic languages, traces of vowel gradation and vowel lengthening can be seen in Ukrainian. As examples of the former we have:—

умéрти = to die (Pfve.), умрý = I shall die;
умори́ти = to kill
дух = spirit; віддихáти = to take breath (Impfve.)
відітхнýти = to take breath (Pfve.)
брáти = to take, берý = I take

As examples of vowel lengthening we have:—

умрý = I shall die (Pfve.); умирáти = to die (Impfve.)
ви́брати = to choose (Pfve.); вибирáти (Impfve.)
текти́ = to flow; тікáти = to flee
ломи́ти = break (Impfve.); ламáти (Freq.)
чекáти = to wait; очíкувати = to expect
послáти = to send (Pfve.); посилáти (Impfve.)

SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS

1. The Slavonic metathesis of liquids is replaced by "polnoglasie", as in Russian. Thus we have:—

гóлос = voice ворóта = gate
бéрег = beach молокó = milk

(Parallel Church Slavonic loan words are rarer in Ukrainian than in Russian. Ukrainian prefers солóдкий for "sweet", сóром for "shame").

2. The 1st Palatalization: к, г, х changing to ч, ж, ш, respectively:—

пекти́ = to bake, печé = bakes, hence by analogy печý = I bake,
стерегти́ = to guard, стережé = guards, стережý I guard, etc.
страх = terror, страшни́й = terrible.

2*a*. ц also changes to ч, as in:—

мíсяць = moon, month, мíсячний = monthly

3. The 2nd Palatalization is fully alive in Ukrainian, in contrast to Russian, к, г, х changing to ц, з, с, e.g.:—

рукá = hand: Dat., Loc. sg. руцí
ногá = foot: Dat., Loc. sg. нозí
кожýх = fur coat: Loc. sg. кожýсі

4. The influence of the *j* element ("yotation"):—

к, г, х change to ч, ж, ш (as in 1st Palatalization):—

стругáти = to plane, стружý (1st pers. sg. Pres.)
плáкати = to weep, плáчу (1st pers. sg. Pres.)
колихáти = to sway, колишý (1st pers. sg. Pres.)

т, д change to ч, and ж or дж (the last mainly in verbs—a peculiarity of Ukrainian and Byelorussian):—

світи́ти = shine, свічу́ (1st pers. sg. Pres.) (but сві́тиш 2nd sg.)
межа́ (<C.S. medja) = boundary but also—
ходи́ти = to go, ходжу́ (1st pers. sg. Pres.)

с, з change to ш, ж:—

писа́ти = to write, пишу́ (1st pers. sg. Pres.), пи́шеш (2nd sg.), etc.
ма́зати = to smear, ма́жу (1st pers. sg. Pres.)

н, л, р become palatalized:—

ора́ти = to plough, орю́ (1st pers. sg. Pres.), but оре́ш with hard р!
коло́ти = to prick, ко́лю (1st pers. sg. Pres.), but ко́леш (medium л!)

п, б, в, м add a palatalized л, which appears in the *3rd pers. plur.* of the Present tense of i-verbs as well as in the 1st pers. sing:—

топи́ти = to heat, 1st sg. Pres. (я) топлю́, 3rd pl. (вони́) то́плять
люби́ти = to love, 1st sg. Pres. (я) люблю́, 3rd pl. (вони́) лю́блять
лови́ти = to catch, 1st sg. Pres. (я) ловлю́, 3rd pl. (вони́) ло́влять
терпі́ти = to suffer, 1st sg. Pres. (я) терплю́, 3rd pl. (вони́) те́рплять

ст, зд change to щ, ждж (the latter a peculiarity of Ukrainian and Byelorussian):—

пусти́ти = to allow, let go (Pfve.), 1st sg. Fut. пущу́
їздити = to ride, 1st sg. Pres. їжджу

ск also changes to щ:--

плеска́ти = to splash, clap, 1st sg. Pres. плещу́

зк changes to жч:—

брязк = ringing (sound of metal), бряжча́ти = to ring

5. Disappearance of consonants at various stages in the life of the language:—

сон = sleep, from the old Indo-European root *sup-*

т dropped in:—
щасли́вий = happy, cf. ща́стя = happiness
існува́ти = to exist, cf. істо́та = a being

пе́рсня Gen. sg. of пе́рстень = a ring
міськи́й = urban, cf. мі́сто = town, мі́сце = place

т is dropped *in pronunciation only* before the endings -ський, -ство, e.g.:—

тури́стський = tourist (adj.) is pronounced тури́ський
студе́нтський = student (adj.) is pronounced студе́нський
студе́нтство = students (coll.) is pronounced студе́нство

So also in the ending -стці, e.g. неві́стці = daughter-in-law (Dat., Loc. sg.)

к dropped in:—

ти́снути = to press, cf. тиск = pressure
бри́знути = to splash, cf. бри́зка = a splash

д dropped in:—

ти́жня, Gen. sg. of ти́ждень = week
пі́зно = late
се́рце = heart

д is dropped *in pronunciation only* in the ending -здці, e.g. поїздці = trip, journey (Dat., Loc. sg.)

л dropped in:—

уми́сний = intentional, cf. мисль = thought
со́нце = sun

6. Epenthetic н is used in the oblique cases of the 3rd person Personal Pronoun after prepositions governing them, e.g.:—

до ньо́го = to him

Prothetic в is very frequent, e.g.:—

вівця́ = sheep
він = he,
вона́ = she
від = from
вузька́ ву́лиця = a narrow street

Prothetic г (phon. ɦ) occurs in горі́х = nut, го́стрий = sharp, гарбу́з = pumpkin, Га́нна = Anne.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN

1. C.S./O.S. ѣ represented by i:—

дíло = a work біс = devil

2. C.S./O.S. o in closed syllables changed to i after the loss of a final semivowel:—

під = under нiс = nose

3. C.S./O.S. e in closed syllables also changed to i after the loss of a final semivowel:—

лід = ice сім = seven

4. C.S./O.S.и and ы both give Ukrainian и (pronounced like a fronted ɨ—see Pronunciation above, p. 106).

син = son, cf. Russian сын сúній = blue, cf. Russian сúний

5. e and и "hard", i.e. do not cause palatalization of the preceding consonant:—

несý, pron. nɛ'su = I carry, cf. Russ. несý, pron. ŋɪ'su
лéбідь, pron. 'lɛbɨd̑ = swan, cf. Russ. лéбедь, pron. 'l̪ebɪt̪
дúво, pron. 'dɨvo = wonder, cf. Russ. дúво, pron. 'd̪ive

6. C.S./O.S. endings -ьць, -ьца, -ица kept soft, hence Ukrainian—

отéць = father, Gen.sg. вітця́, cf Russ. отéц, отцá
вівця́ = sheep, cf. Russ. овцá
темнúця = prison, cf. Russ. темнúца

7. Adjectival ending derived from C.S. -ьскъ has soft c in Ukrainian:—

зéмський = land (adj.) пóльський = Polish

8. C.S./O.S. -ьѥ for neuter nouns (Nom. sing.) appears as -я in Ukrainian (cf. Russ. -ье and -ие):—

писáння = writing, cf. Russ. писание
життя́ = life, cf. Russ. житьё
збíльшення = increase

9. Clear pronunciation of o ("okanie"):—

говорити pron. ɦovo'rɨtɨ = to speak, cf. Russ. говорить pron. gəvʌ'ɾit̪

10. Infinitive ending -ти:—

говорúти

11. Masculine singular form of Past tense for most verbs in -в: питáв= asked, хвалúв = praised, був = was.

12. Within a word (but not in word juncture) the fricative *chuintantes* ш and ж (and the affricate ч) are assimilated (in pronunciation only) to the corresponding soft sibilants с' [ʂ] and з' [ʐ] (and ч becomes soft ц' [ʧ]) before a following soft с' or ц'; e.g.:—

купáєшся = you bathe, pron. ku'pajeʂʂa
на подýшці = on the pillow, pron. na po'duʂʧi
не порíжся = don't cut yourself, pron. ne po'ɾiʐʂa
кнúжці = to the book, pron. 'knɨʐʧi
не мýчся = don't worry!, pr. ne 'muʧʂa or ne 'muʧʂa
дóчці = to the daughter (Dat. sg.), pron. 'doʧʂi (cf. Byelorussian, p. 195, No. 4).

13. A feature of Ukrainian, shared with Polish, and not occurring consistently, is the occurrence of o for an original e after a *chuintante* or й before a hard consonant or syllable; hence:—

жонáтий = married, cf. женúти = to marry, and Pol. żona = wife
чоловíк = man, cf. Russ. человéк
шóстий = sixth, cf. Gen.sg. шестú = of six, Pol. szósty = sixth
йогó = him, it, Acc., Gen. sg. of він and воно́

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN, ALSO TO BE FOUND IN BYELORUSSIAN

14. C.S./O.S. г written г and pronounced ɦ (voiced), e.g.:—

горá pron. ɦo'ra = hill, cf, Russ. горá pron. gʌ'ra (This is also a feature of southern Great Russian dialects.)

15. C.S. *d* + *j* often changes to дж:—

суджý = I judge, cf. Russ. сужý, O.S. сѫждѫ

16. в after vowels finally in words and syllables pronounced ʉ:—

кров pron. kroʉ = blood cf. Russ. кровь
прáвда " 'praʉda = truth " прáвда
пішóв " ɲi'ʃoʉ = he went " пошёл
(*N.B.* -ов< -ол! fem. пішлá)

17. C.S. rъ, rь and lъ, lь develop into ри, ли in unstressed syllables:—

кривáвий = bloody cf. Russ. кровáвый
дрижáти = to tremble " дрожáть
глитáти = to swallow " глотáть

18. Doubling of single, soft consonants before C.S./O.S. -ьj-:—

брáття = brothers, ходíння = going
cf. Russ. брáтья лля́ти = to pour, O.S. -льѩти
життя́ = life

19. Initial unaccented i and y reduced to й and ў (written в) when the preceding word ends in a vowel and when followed by a single consonant:—

Прийшóв учи́тель до вчи́теля = one teacher came to another teacher
Прибíг[1] Івáн до Йвáна = John came running to John
Вонá йдé = she is going

The same applies to i (= й) = and, and y (= в) in:-

брат[1] і сестрá = brother and sister
But— сестрá й брат

він у хáті = he is in the cottage
But— вонá в хáті = she is in the cottage

20. Loss of soft labials:—

гóлуб = pigeon, cf. Russ. гóлубь
сім = seven " семь
п'ю (pron. pju) = I drink " пью

21. Spread of ending in -ів for Gen. plur. of nouns:—

хатíв from хáта =house, cottage
почуттíв " почуття́ (neut.sg.) = feeling
матерíв " мáти = mother

22. Preservation of the Vocative case in the singular of masc. and fem. nouns (see Morphology).

23. -мо as the ending of the 1st pers. plur. Pres. tense (cf. Serbocr., Slovenian)[2]:—

несемó = we carry, cf. Russ. несём

[1] Before i in word juncture hard consonants usually are *not* palatalized.

[2] In modern literary Byelorussian the final -o only survives in the alternative forms дамо (=дадзíм), ямо (=ядзíм). (See p. 243.)

24. Formation of the Future tense of Imperfective verbs with the suffixes -му, -меш, -ме, -мемо, -мете, -муть (cf. O.S. имѫ etc. = I take): читáтиму = I shall read, cf. Russ. я бýду читáть

25. -ть as the ending of the 3rd pers. plur. Present of all verbs and of the 3rd pers. sing. Pres. for i-verbs:— знáють = they know, рóбить = he does.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN, ALSO TO BE FOUND IN GREAT RUSSIAN AND BYELORUSSIAN
(*i.e.* characteristics of the East Slav Group)

26. Development of the semivowels: ъ into o, ь into e:—

Ukrainian: сон = sleep, O.S. сънъ
" увéсь = all, " вьсь

27. Development of the nasal vowels: ѫ into у, ѧ into я:—

муж = husband
п'ять = five

28. "Polnoglasie":—

Ukrainian: молокó = milk, O.S. млѣко
бéрег = coast " брѣгъ
молоди́й = young " младъ
дороги́й = dear " драгъ

29. Initial je changed to o:—

Ukrainian: оди́н = one
óзеро = lake

30. C.S. t + j becomes ч:—

вертíти = to turn, 1st pers. sg. Pres. верчý <*верт-jѫ

31. e and o the fill-vowels: e.g. in Gen. plur.:—

вíкон = of windows, Nom. sg. вікнó
земéль = of lands " " земля́
книжóк = of books " " кни́жка
вóєн = of wars " " війнá

32. Use of Gen. plur. for Acc. plur. for animate nouns (but usually not for the names of domestic animals, in contrast to Russian):—

бáчу людéй (or жíнок) = I see people (or women)

And usually—

бáчу óленів, жукíв, горобцíв = I see the stags, beetles, sparrows

but пасý волú = I am grazing the oxen

MORPHOLOGY

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Ukrainian, like other Slavonic languages, has three genders for nouns, and has two numbers, singular and plural, having lost the dual, except for a few relics. There are seven cases; the Vocative has a separate form in the singular of masculine and feminine nouns, otherwise it is the same as the Nominative.

As in Russian, there are hard and soft varieties of declensions, the soft really having the same endings as the hard but with the corresponding soft vowels. Nouns whose stems end in a *chuintante* are called mixed: after ж, ч, ш, щ, а and у are written of the hard vowels and і of the soft vowels, but е replaces о and і replaces и; in the Vocative singular masculine -у is preferred.

The declensions can be divided into the same four categories as in Russian and Serbocroätian, i.e.:—

i-stems—feminine,
consonant stems—neuter,
a-stems—mainly feminine,
o-stems—subdivided into masculine and neuter.

The old (short) *й*-stems have left numerous traces mainly in the declension of the masculine *o*-stems, e.g. in the Gen., Dat. and Loc. sing. and Gen. plural.

As in other Slavonic languages, the Accusative singular of masculine animate nouns is the same as the Genitive, while that for inanimate nouns is usually the same as the Nom. But in Ukrainian the Genitive form of the Accusative has been extended to many inanimate nouns—a peculiarity of Ukrainian, e.g.:—

птах почи́стив но́са = the bird cleaned its bill

As in Russian, the use of the Genitive for the Accusative in the plural has been extended from the masculine animate nouns to the feminine and even to the neuter animate nouns; but *not* to the names of domestic animals.

In the Dat., Instr. and Loc. plural the feminine endings -ам, -ами, -ах (-ям, -ями, -ях for soft stems) have been extended to the declensions of all genders.

The Genitive plural ending in -ів has been extended to some feminine and neuter nouns as well (See "Features Characteristic of Ukrainian" No. 21).

Peculiar to Ukrainian declensions are the neuter ending in -я and the pluralia tantum in -щі. The behaviour of the consonantal declension should also be

noted.

1. *i*-stems, feminine only (soft, ending in -ь or a *chuintante*).

ра́дість = joy

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	ра́дість	ра́дості
Gen.	ра́дості	ра́достей
Dat.	ра́дості	ра́достям
Acc.	ра́дість	ра́дості
Instr.	ра́дістю	ра́достями
Loc.	ра́дості	ра́достях
Voc.	ра́досте	

Notice the vowel alternations і/о and і/е in: ніч (=night), Gen. Dat. Loc. sg.: но́чі, Instr. sg.: ні́ччю; Nom. Acc. pl.: но́чі, Gen. pl.: ночей, Dat. pl. ночам, etc.; річ (= matter, thing), Gen. Dat. Loc. sg. ре́чі, etc.

In the Instr. sg. before -ю a stem ending in a single consonant, except щ, р or a labial, has it doubled, e.g.:—

тінь = shade, Instr. sg. ті́нню
по́дорож = journey, " " по́дорожжю

Labials and р take an ' (apostrophë) instead, e.g.:—

любо́в = love, Gen.sg. любо́ві, Instr.sg. любо́в'ю
кі́новар = cinnabar, Instr.sg. кі́новар'ю

щ remains:—

не́хворощ = wormwood, Instr. sg. не́хворощю

Notice that путь = road, is feminine in Ukrainian.

A special pluralia tantum category, regarded as separate nouns, exists:—

Nom./Acc.	ра́дощі	= joys
Gen.	ра́дощів	
Dat.	ра́дощам	
Instr.	ра́дощами	
Loc.	ра́дощах	

So also:—

ла́сощі = sweetmeats
хи́трощі = ruses
лі́ноші = lazy habits
мо́лодощі = one's young years, etc.

2. Consonant stems, with -н- and -т-. Neuters only.

ім'я́ = name

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	ім'я́	імена́
Gen.	і́мен, ім'я́	іме́н
Dat.	і́менi	імена́м
Acc.	ім'я́	імена́
Instr.	і́менем, ім'я́м	імена́ми
Loc.	і́менi	імена́х
Voc.	= Nom.	

курча́ = chicken

Nom.	курча́	курча́та
Gen.	курча́ти	курча́т
Dat.	курча́тi	курча́там
Acc.	курча́	курча́т(а)
Instr.	курча́м (only)	курча́тами
Loc.	курча́тi	курча́тах
Voc.	= Nom.	

Like курча́ are declined all nouns denoting young creatures, e.g.:—гуся́ (= gosling), Gen. sg. гуся́ти, etc., substituting -ят- for -ат- in the ending.

For *all* neuter nouns Acc. sg. = Nom. sg. In the plural Nom. = Voc. = Acc., except for living beings which may have Acc. pl. = Gen. pl., e.g.: Acc. pl. хлоп'я́т (= little boys), from хлоп'я́— -ят/-ат obligatory for human beings, but not for animals.

Irregular -р- consonantal stem:—

ма́ти = mother

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	ма́ти	матері́
Gen.	ма́тері	матері́в
Dat.	ма́тері	матеря́м
Acc.	ма́тір	матері́в
Instr.	ма́тір'ю	матеря́ми
Loc.	ма́тері	матеря́х
Voc.	ма́ти	

3. *a*-stems, mostly feminine. As in Russian, the old hard stem endings have predominated in the Gen. sg., Nom. (and Acc.) plur. of the soft stems—hence -i. The ending -i also regularly represents in Ukrainian the old -ѣ of Dat. and Loc. sg.

фа́брика = factory; робітни́ця = workwoman; наді́я = hope; пло́ща = area

SING.	*Hard*	*Soft: Cons. stem*	*Vowel stem*	*Chuintante stem*
Nom.	фа́брика	робітни́ця	наді́я	пло́ща
Gen.	фа́брики	робітни́цi	наді́ї	пло́щi
Dat.	фа́брицi[1]	робітни́цi	наді́ї	пло́щi
Acc.	фа́брику	робітни́цю	наді́ю	пло́щу
Instr.	фа́бриком	робітни́цею	наді́єю	пло́щею
Loc.	фа́брицi[1]	робітни́цi	наді́ї	пло́щi
Voc.	фа́брико	робітни́це	наді́є	пло́ще
PLUR.				
Nom.	фа́брики	робітни́цi	наді́ї	пло́щi
Gen.	фа́брик	робітни́ць	наді́й	пло́щ
Dat.	фа́бракам	робітни́цям	наді́ям	пло́щам
Acc.	фа́брики	робітни́ць	наді́ї	пло́щi
Instr.	фа́бриками	робітни́цями	наді́ями	пло́щами
Loc.	фа́бриках	робітни́цях	наді́ях	пло́щах

Like наді́я also go all fem. nouns ending in -'я, e.g.:—

сім'я́ = family

A few fem. *a*-stems have an affectionate Voc. sg. in -ю, e.g.:—

до́ню! = daughter тьо́тю! = Auntie
мату́сю! = mummy Га́лю! from Гали́на

The Acc. plur. is the same as the Gen. pl. for animate nouns, as робітни́ць above, though for domestic animals the form of the Nom. is used as for inanimates, e.g.:—

гна́ти ві́вцi, коро́ви = to drive (out) sheep, cows

Notice the appearance of fill-vowels in consonant groups in the Gen. pl., which has no ending, as in книжо́к (= of books). So also:—

мі́тел from мітла́ = broom
і́гор from ігра́ = game
во́єн (and війн) from війна́ = war

The last example also shows the *possibility* of the vowel alternation o/i. So also:—

осо́ба = person, Gen. pl. осі́б
доро́га = road, Gen. pl. доро́г

[1]Only velar stems undergo this change of consonant in the stem according to the second Palatalization (see p. 111, no. 3).

but—

істо́та = creature, Gen. pl. істо́т, etc.

A few *a*-stems have Gen. pl. in -ей:—

сіме́й from сім'я́ = family
мише́й " ми́ша = mouse, Gen. sg. ми́ші
свине́й " свиня́ = pig
стате́й " стаття́ = article

The Gen. pl. in -ів of the masc. nouns has been extended to some *a*-stems too:—

хаті́в from ха́та = house, cottage, or хат
су́ддів " судді́я = judge

A few *a*-stems have Instr. plur. in -ми:—

слі́зьми́ as well as сльоза́ми from сльоза́ = tear
сви́ньми́ " " " сви́нями " свиня́ = pig

The accent may shift in the course of declension, e.g.:—

стіна́ = wall, Voc. sg. сті́но, Acc. sg. etc. сті́ну́, Nom. pl. etc. сті́ни
кни́жка = book, Nom. pl. книжки́, Gen. pl. книжо́к
душа́ = soul, Voc. sg. ду́ше, Acc. sg. ду́шу, Gen. Dat. Loc. sg. душі́, Nom. pl. ду́ші, etc.

дити́на (= child), ді́вчина (= girl, maiden), люди́на *f.* (= person) have irregular plurals as follows:—

Nom.	ді́ти	дівча́та (cons. stem)	лю́ди
Gen.	діте́й	дівча́т	люде́й
Dat.	ді́тям	дівча́там	лю́дям
Acc.	діте́й	дівча́т	люде́й
Instr.	ді́тьми	дівча́тами	людьми́
Loc.	ді́тях	дівча́тах	лю́дях
Voc.	= Nom.		

соба́ка, Gen. sg. соба́ки (= dog), can be masc. as well as fem. in gender.

4*a*. Masculine *o*-stems. The soft and *chuintante* stem versions of this declension contain the endings regularly corresponding to those in the hard declension. The Dat. and Loc. sing. generally have the ending -ові (soft: -еві, -єві) from the old *ŭ*-stems, as in the West Slav languages and in contrast to Russian. In the Dat., Instr., and Loc. plur. the originally feminine endings have been generalized for both masc. and neuter declensions.

робітни́к = workman; учи́тель = teacher; край = land, border; това́риш = comrade

SING.	*Hard*	*Soft: Cons. stem*
Nom.	робітни́к	учи́тель
Gen.	робітника́	учи́теля
Dat.	робітникО́ві, -у́	учи́телеві, -ю
Acc.	робітника́	учи́теля
Instr.	робітникО́м	учи́телем
Loc.	робітникО́ві, -у́	учи́телеві, -і, -ю
Voc.	робітнику́, -ни́че	учи́телю
PLUR.		
Nom.	робітники́	учителі́
Gen.	робітні́в	учителі́в
Dat.	робітника́м	учителя́м
Acc.	робітні́в	учителі́в
Instr.	робітника́ми	учителя́ми
Loc.	робітника́х	учителя́х

SING.	*Vowel stem*	*Chuintante stem*
Nom.	край	това́риш
Gen.	кра́ю	това́риша
Dat.	кра́єві, -ю	това́ришеві, -у
Acc.	край	това́риша
Instr.	кра́єм	това́ришем
Loc.	кра́ї, -ю́	това́ришеві, -і, -у
Voc.	кра́ю	това́ришу
PLUR.		
Nom.	краї́	товариші́
Gen.	краї́в	товариші́в
Dat.	краї́м	товариша́м
Acc.	краї́	товариші́в
Instr.	краї́ми	товариша́ми
Loc.	краї́х	товариша́х

Nouns ending in -ар or -яр can belong to the hard, soft or mixed (*chuintante*) type of declension:—

комуна́р = communard has Gen.sg. комуна́ра
Dat.sg. комуна́рові or комуна́ру

секрета́р = secretary has Gen.sg.секретаря́
Dat.sg.секретаре́ві or секретарю́

школя́р = schoolboy has Gen.sg. школяра́
Dat.sg. школяре́ві or школяру́
Instr.sg.школяре́м

The regular ending of the *Gen. sing.* is -а (for soft stems -я). The following categories of nouns have their Gen. sg. in -у (for soft stems -ю):—

(1) most words denoting any matter or material, e.g.:—

мед (also мід)	= honey	Gen.sg.	ме́ду
пісо́к	= sand	" "	піску́

but—

хлі́б	= bread	" "	хлі́ба

(2) most words denoting anything collective, e.g.:—

рід	= class, gender	Gen.sg.	ро́ду
орке́стр	= orchestra	" "	орке́стру
ліс	= a wood	" "	лі́су
університе́т	= university	" "	університе́ту

(3) most words denoting a space or place, e.g.:—

луг = meadow Gen.sg. лу́гу

(4) most words denoting a phenomenon of nature, e.g.:—

дощ	= rain	Gen. sg.	дощу́
хо́лод	= cold	" "	хо́лоду

(5) most words denoting feelings, e.g.:—

гнів = anger Gen. sg. гні́ву

(6) most words denoting processes, states, qualities, formations, manifestations of communal life, generalities, abstractions:—

біг	= running	Gen.sg.	бі́гу
ритм	= rhythm	" "	ри́тму
соціалі́зм	= socialism	" "	соціалі́зму

(7) most words with prefixes, but no suffixes:—

при́клад	= example	Gen.sg.	при́кладу
обі́д	= dinner	" "	обі́ду
відпочи́нок	= a rest	" "	відпочи́нку

but—

по́їзд	= train	" "	по́їзда

and a few others.

(8) most compound words (formed from two nouns):—

водопрові́д = water mains G.sg. водопрово́ду

(9) some foreign words:—

орна́мент = ornament Gen. sg. орна́менту

(10) geographical names, except the names of towns, villages, etc., e.g.:—

Дуна́й	= Danube	Gen.sg.	Дуна́ю
Ура́л	= Ural mountains	" "	Ура́лу
Кріт	= Crete	" "	Крі́ту
Іра́н	= Iran	" "	Іра́ну
Сибі́р	= Siberia	" "	Сибі́ру
Байка́л	= (Lake) Baikal	" "	Байка́лу

In the *Dat. sing.* the regular ending is -ові (-еві, -єві), except in:—

(1) nouns and names ending in -в and -ин, -ін, -їн, e.g.:—

рів	= ditch	Dat.sg.	ро́ву
Ки́їв[1]	= Kiev	" "	Ки́єву
Га́ршин[1]	(a name)	" "	Га́ршину

(2) consecutive masc. nouns, one of which only has -ові (-еві); thus we should say:—

това́ришу Петро́ві (= to comrade Peter), or
това́ришеві Петру́

In the *Loc. sing.*, of the three alternative endings -ові (-еві, -єві), -у (-ю) and -і (-ї), the first is used largely for animate nouns, but not exclusively so. Of the remainder—

(1) nouns ending in -к require the -у ending, e.g.:—

у мішку́ = in the sack, from мішо́к

(2) those monosyllabic nouns which have their Gen. sg. ending in -у, -ю (unstressed) have their Loc. sg. in -у, -ю stressed, e.g.:—

степ = steppe, Gen.sg. сте́пу, Loc.sg. у степу́

(3) inanimate nouns without suffixes usually have the ending -і (before which velars undergo the 2nd Palatalization as in the *a*-stems!), e.g.:—

[1] In the Instr. sing. *place* names in -в, -н, and -ськ have the ending -ом, but *surnames* have -им (the adjectival ending): Ки́євом, but Га́ршиним. Yet surnames have -и (not -і) in the Nom. pl.: Гаршини (see p. 127).

бéрег = shore, Loc. sg. на бéрезі (and на берегý)

The preposition "по" when meaning "about" (of extent in space) requires the Loc. sg. ending -у:—

по лíсу = about the forest[1]

but when it means "after" it requires -і in the Loc. sg.:—

по обíді = after dinner

In the *Voc. sing.* hard stems regularly have -е, before which the 1st Palatalization of velars takes place, as in Serbocr., etc., e.g.:—

друг = friend, Voc. sg. дрýже!

So also nouns in -ець, e.g.:—

хлóпець = boy, Voc. sg. хлóпче!

But most nouns ending in -к or a *chuintante* have -у, e.g.:—

синóк = sonny Voc. sg. сúнку!
товáриш = comrade " " товáришу!

Also—

дíду! = grandfather!
сúну! = son!
тáту! = daddy!, from тато

Soft stems all have -ю, e.g.:—

учúтелю = teacher!

Surnames ending in -в or -ин, -ін , but *not* place names, have a Voc. sing. like the Nom. sing.
Surnames, when preceded by a noun in the Voc., need not be put in the Voc. themselves, e.g.:—

товáришу Федорчук!

In the *Nom. plur.* nouns ending in -анин, -янин and -ин in Nom. sg. lose the syllable -ин- and end in -ани, -яни, or -и, e.g.:—

селянúн = peasant Nom.pl. селя́ни
татáрин = Tatar " " татáри
хазя́їн = master of the house " " хазяї́

In the *Gen. plur.* these masc. nouns have no ending instead of the regular ending -ів, e.g.:—

селя́н = of the peasants

[1]But у лíсі = in the forest.

A few other nouns also have no ending, e.g.:—

чобíт from чóбіт = boot

день (= day), Gen. sg. дня has Gen. plur. днів as well as день after numerals.

In the *Acc. plur.* the names of domestic animals, although animate, have the same form as the Nom. plur. instead of the Gen. plur., e.g.:—

кóні = horses, not кóней (irregular)
волú = oxen, " волíв

Masculine surnames ending in -в and -н have a special declension which is adjectival in the Instrumental singular and in the oblique cases of the plural, e.g.:—

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom.	Гáршин	Гáршини
Gen.	Гáршина	Гáршиних
Dat.	Гáршину	Гáршиним
Acc.	Гáршина	Гáршиних
Instr.	Гáршиним	Гáршиними
Loc.	Гáршині, -у	Гáршинах

4*b*. Neuter *o*-stems. These present far fewer alternative endings than the masculine *o*-stems. Nom. = Voc. = Acc. in the singular and plural, as in other Slavonic languages, Latin, Greek. The special declension of neuters ending in -я (from -ьѥ) should be noted.

мíсто = town; мíсце = place; прíзвище = surname; питáння = question

SING.	*Hard*	*Soft*
Nom.	мíсто	мíсце
Gen.	мíста	мíсця
Dat.	мíсту	мíсцю
Acc.	мíсто	мíсце
Instr.	мíстом	мíсцем
Loc.	мíсті	мíсці
Voc.	= Nom.	
PLUR.		
Nom.	містá	місця́
Gen.	міст	місць
Dat.	містáм	місця́м
Acc.	містá	місця́
Instr.	містáми	місця́ми
Loc.	містáх	місця́х

SING.	*Chuintante stem*	
Nom.	прі́звище	пита́ння
Gen.	прі́звища	пита́ння
Dat.	прі́звищу	пита́нню
Acc.	прі́звище	пита́ння
Instr.	прі́звищем	пита́нням
Loc.	прі́звищі	пита́нні
Voc.	= Nom.	

PLUR.		
Nom.	прі́звища	пита́ння
Gen.	прі́звищ	пита́нь
Dat.	прі́звищам	пита́нням
Acc.	прі́звища	пита́ння
Instr.	прі́звищами	пита́ннями
Loc.	прі́звищах	пита́ннях

In the *Dat. sing.* only names and animate nouns ending in -ко have the ending -ові, the latter as an alternative to -у, hence:—

Петре́нкові from Петре́нко

but—

дитя́ткові or дитя́тку from дитя́тко = a little child

In the *Loc. sing.* animate nouns in -ко have the alternative endings -ові or -у, as in the Dat. sing.

Other nouns in -ко have Loc. sg. in -ку (not *-кі or *-ці),[1] e.g.:—

у ві́йську = in the army
на я́блучку = on the little apple

The *Gen. plur.* regularly has no ending, except in:—

(1) some nouns with a stressed ending in the plural, e.g.:—

мо́ре	= sea	Gen.pl.	морі́в
по́ле	= field	" "	полі́в or піль
почуття́	= feeling	" "	почуттів
відкриття́	= discovery	" "	відкриттів

(2) nouns ending in -'я, e.g.:—

прислі́в'я	= saying	Gen.pl.	прислі́в'їв
подві́р'я	= yard	" "	подві́р'їв

[1]After the preposition по with the meaning of 'over' other nouns also have the ending -у/-ю in the Loc. sing.: e.g. по о́зеру = over the lake, по по́лю = over the field.

Double consonants become single before ь, as in пи́тань above.

The vowel alternations o/i and e/i occur when there is no ending in this case, hence:—

сло́во	= word	has Gen.pl.	слів
село́	= village	" " "	сіл

But nouns in -ення do not have the vowel alternation, e.g.:—

зна́чення = meaning, Gen.pl. зна́чень

The fill-vowels о, е, є also occur in certain nouns, e.g.:—

вікно́	= window	has Gen. plur.	ві́кон
відро́	= pail	" " "	ві́дер
яйце́	= egg	" " "	яє́ць

о́ко (= eye), плече́ (= shoulder), (в)у́хо (= ear) have irregular plurals which decline as follows:—

Nom.	о́чі (ві́чі)	пле́чі	ву́ха	more often than у́ші
Gen.	оче́й	плече́й or пліч	вух	" " " уше́й
Dat.	оча́м	пле́ча́м	ву́хам	" " " уша́м
Acc.	о́чі (ві́чі)	пле́чі	ву́ха	" " " у́ші
Instr.	оча́ми or очи́ма	плеча́ми or -и́ма	ву́хами	" " " уши́ма
Loc.	оча́х	пле́ча́х	ву́хах	" " " уша́х
Voc.	= Nom.			

чу́до (= marvel) and не́бо (= sky, heaven) have an *s* (consonantal) stem plural: чудеса́, небеса́, with regular endings. Gen. pl.: чуде́с, небе́с.

THE NUMERALS

Cardinal: 1 is an adjectival numeral agreeing with the noun it qualifies in gender and case. Only the Gen. sing. fem. and the Instr. sing. fem. may have non-adjectival endings:— Gen. одні́єї or одно́ї (cf. "Adjectives", pp. 137-139); Instr. одні́єю or одно́ю.

2, 3 and 4 are also adjectives and take their noun in the plural (as in West Slav languages) in the Nominative.[1] In the other cases they agree with their noun in case. We give their declension below. 5 onwards are treated as nouns and in the Nom.

[1]For many nouns this form has the stress accent of the Gen. sg. and the old Nom. *dual*, from which it is derived: e.g. брат brother, Gen.s. бра́та, Nom.pl. брати́, but два бра́ти; сестра́ = sister, Gen.s. сестри́, Nom.pl. се́стри, but дві сестри́; вікно́ = window, Gen.s. вікна́, Nom.pl. ві́кна, but три вікна́

and Acc. are followed by the Gen. plur. In the oblique cases numerals and nouns agree in case.

The Accusative of all numerals, except одну́ (fem. sing.), is the same as the Nom. for inanimates and as the Gen. for animates, according to the familiar rule of Slavonic.

All the components of a compound cardinal numeral are declined.

	Nom. *Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Gen. sing. masc. neut.*
1	оди́н	одна́	одно́ (or одне́)	одного́, etc., as hard adjective

(Always finally stressed, except in одно́му (Loc. sg. masc. and neut.) and одни́ми (Instr. plur.) as well as in the special fem. forms above. After a preposition the stress is on the first syllable.)

	Nom., Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Gen./Loc.*	*Dat.*	*Instr.*
2	два	дві	два	двох	двом	двома́
3	три			трьох	трьом	трьома́
4	чоти́ри			чотирьо́х	чотирьо́м	чотирма́
5	п'ять			п'яти́ or п'ятьо́х	п'яти́ or п'ятьо́м	п'ятьма́ or п'ятьома́
6	шість			шести́ or шістьо́х	шести́ or шістьо́м	шістьма́ or шістьома́
7	сім			семи́ or сімо́х	семи́ or сімо́м	сьома́ or сімома́
8	ві́сім			восьми́ or вісьмо́х	восьми́ or вісьмо́м	вісьма́ or вісьмома́

9	де́в'ять
10	де́сять
11	одина́дцять
12	двана́дцять
13	трина́дцять
14	чотирна́дцять
15	п'ятна́дцять
16	шістна́дцять[1]
17	сімна́дцять
18	вісімна́дцять
19	дев'ятна́дцять
20	два́дцять
30	три́дцять

} 9-30 are declined like п'ять

[1]Pronounced: ʃɔis'nadʦat, dropping the first т.

		Gen./Dat./Instr./Loc.
40	со́рок	сорока́

		Gen./Loc.	*Dat.*	*Instr.*
50	п'ятдеся́т	п'ятдесяти́ or п'ятдесятьо́х	п'ятдесяти́ or п'ятдесятьо́м	п'ятдесятьма́ or п'ятдесятьома́

60	шістдеся́т	60, 70, and 80 are declined like п'ятдеся́т above.
70	сімдеся́т	
80	вісімдеся́т	

		Gen./Dat./Instr./Loc.
90	дев'яно́сто	дев'яно́ста
100	сто	ста
101	сто оди́н	

	Nom./Acc.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Instr.*	*Loc.*
200	дві́сті	двохсо́т	двомста́м	двомаста́ми	двохста́х
300	три́ста	like дві́сті			
400	чоти́риста	like дві́сті			

		Gen.	*Dat.*	*Instr.*	*Loc.*
500	п'ятсо́т	п'ятисо́т	п'ятиста́м	п'ятьмаста́ми or п'ятьомаста́ми	п'ятиста́х

600	шістсо́т	600, 700, 800 and 900 are declined like п'ятсо́т
700	сімсо́т	
800	вісімсо́т	
900	дев'ятсо́т	

1,000	ти́сяча	declined like a noun
2,000	дві ти́сячі	

100,000	сто ти́сяч	declined like a noun
1,000,000	мільйо́н	" " "
1,000,000,000	мілья́рд	" " "

Notice півтора́ (masc. and neut.), півтори́ (fem.) —indeclinable— + Gen. sing. = one and a half.

Ordinal: The Ordinal Numerals are adjectives and are all declined like hard adjectives, except тре́тій, тре́тя, тре́тє, which is soft. (See under "Adjectives", below, pp. 137-139, for their declension.)

In compound Ordinals only the last figure is ordinal and is declined, e.g.:—

в ти́сяча дев'ятсо́т три́дцять дев'я́тому (році)
= in 1939

1st	пе́рший, пе́рша, пе́рше
2nd	дру́гий, дру́га, дру́ге
3rd	тре́тій, тре́тя, тре́тє
4th	четве́ртий, -а, -е
5th	п'я́тий, etc.
6th	шо́стий
7th	сьо́мий
8th	во́сьмий
9th	дев'я́тий
10th	деся́тий
11th	одина́дцятий, etc.
20th	двадця́тий
30th	тридця́тий
40th	сороко́вий
50th	п'ятдеся́тий, etc.
90th	дев'яно́стий
100th	со́тий
200th	двохсо́тий, etc.
500th	п'ятисо́тий, etc.
1,000th	ти́сячний
2,000th	двохти́сячний, etc.
1,000,000th	мільйо́нний

Collective: The Collective Numerals: обо́є and оби́два (fem. оби́дві) (= both) and дво́є (= two) in their oblique cases have the same endings as the oblique cases of два, i.e. обо́х, двох, etc.

тро́є (= three) also has no oblique cases of its own, and is declined like три, i.e. Gen. трьох, etc.

The same applies to all the other collective numerals: че́тверо, п'я́теро, etc., which in the oblique cases are replaced by the corresponding cardinal numerals.

They are used for masculine and neuter animate nouns and neuter inanimate nouns, considered as groups, and also with *pluralia tantum*, and take the noun in the Gen. plur.

Distributive: Distributive Numerals are expressed by по + Acc. except with 'one' which goes in the Dative, e.g. по дві кни́ги = two books each, but по о́дному = one each.

THE PRONOUNS

The pronominal declension in Ukrainian is important because it also gives a clue to the adjectival declension, as in Russian, for the adjectival declension is a continuation of the old definite adjective declension which was compounded of indefinite adjective + pronoun. It contains the following categories:

Demonstrative:	той	= that
	цей	= this
Interrogative:	хто?	= who?
	що?	= what?
Indefinite:	хтось	= someone
	де́хто	= some (people)
Negative:	ніхто́	= no-one
	жо́дний...не	= not a single
Relative:	хто	= who
	що	= that
Possessive (pronoun-adjectives):	мій	= my, mine
	наш	= our(s)
	ї́хній	= their[1]
Definitive:	весь (увесь, ввесь)	= all
	сам	= -self
	ко́жний	= each
	той са́мий	= the same
	і́нший	= other, another
Personal:	він	= he
	я	= I
	ти	= thou

The declension of—

наш	= our
ваш	= your
я́кий?	= of what kind?
котри́й?	= which?
ко́жен (or ко́жний)	= each
жо́дний (or жо́ден)	= (in negations) no, none
і́нший	= other
вся́кий	= every
всіля́кий	= (of) different (kinds)
сами́й, -а́, -е́	= alone (just)
са́мий, -а, -е and сам, сама́, само́, plur. (lit. lang.) самі́	= the very ... = -self, alone

is identical with that of the hard adjectives, q.v.

ї́хній (= their) is declined like a soft adjective.

There are no enclitic Personal Pronouns in Ukrainian. After all prepositions the stress of all

[1]His, its = його́, her = її́ —Gen.sg. of 3rd pers. Personal Pronouns—are invariable, as in Russian.

finally stressed dissyllabic pronouns governed by them shifts on to the first syllable, e.g.:—

мене́	= me	за ме́не	= for me
чого́?	= of what?	від чо́го?	= from what?
всього́	= of all	з усьо́го	= out of all...
тому́ (Dat.)	= to that	на то́му (Loc.)	= on that...

The Loc. sing. of all but the Possessive Pronouns and я (мені́), ти (тобі́) and себе́ (собі́) differs, therefore, *only* in the position of the stress from the Dat. sing. But in Gen. sing. the stress of pronouns used as possessives and occurring after a preposition remains on the last syllable, e.g.:—

до його́ до́му = to his house

As in the nouns, for the Acc. sing. masc. and the Acc. plur. of all genders Acc. = Nom. for inanimates and Acc. = Gen. for animates.

той = that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	той	те	та	ті
Gen.	того́[1]		тієї (тої)	тих
Dat.	тому́		тій	тим
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	те	ту	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	тим		тією (то́ю)	ти́ми
Loc.	то́му (тім)		тій	тих

Like той, the deictic оте́й = that there

цей = this

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	цей	це	ця	ці
Gen.	цього́[1]		цієї	цих
Dat.	цьому́		цій	цим
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	це	цю	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	цим		цією	ци́ми
Loc.	цьо́му (цім)		цій	цих

Before words beginning with ц, forms from сей are used: се цікáво = this is interesting, and in a few fixed expressions.

Like цей, the deictic оце́й = this here.

[1] Concerning the stress in the Gen. sing. masc. and neut. *after prepositions*, see the paragraph above on pp. 133-134.

хто = who? що = what?

Nom.	хто	що
Gen.	кого́	чого́
Dat.	кому́	чому́
Acc.	кого́	що
Instr.	ким	чим
Loc.	ко́му (кім)	чо́му (чім)

These can also be used as Relative Pronouns like the corresponding words in other Slavonic languages.

весь (уве́сь, ввесь) = all

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	весь (уве́сь, ввесь)	все (усе́)	вся (уся́)	всі (усі́)
Gen.	всього́		всієї	всіх
Dat.	всьому́		всій	всім
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	все (усе́)	всю	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	всім		всією	всіма́
Loc.	всьо́му (всім)		всій	всіх

Initial в alternates with у according to the general rule (see "Pronunciation").

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	мій	моє́	моя́	мої́
Gen.	мого́		моє́ї	мої́х
Dat.	моє́му		мої́й	мої́м
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	моє́	мою́	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	моїм		моє́ю	мої́ми
Loc.	моє́му (мої́м)		мої́й	мої́х

Like мій, твій = your(s) (sg.), свій = (my, your, his, etc.) own.

Notice also the declension of чий (= whose), which agrees with the noun it qualifies in gender, number, and case:—

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	чий	чиє́	чия́	чиї́
Gen.	чийо́го		чиє́ї	чиї́х
Dat.	чийо́му (чиє́му)		чиї́й	чиї́м
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	чиє́	чию́	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	чиї́м		чиє́ю	чиї́ми
Loc.	чийо́му (чиє́му, чиї́м)		чиї́й	чиї́х

The Personal Pronouns

він = he, вона́ = she, воно́ = it

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	він[1]	воно́	вона́	вони́
Gen.	його́ (ньо́го)		її́ (не́ї)	їх (них)
Dat.	йому́		їй	їм
Acc.	його́ (ньо́го)		її́ (не́ї)	їх (них)
Instr.	ним		не́ю	ни́ми
Loc.	ньо́му (нім)		ній	них

Nom.	я = I	ми = we	ти = thou	ви = you
Gen.	мене́[2]	нас	тебе́[2]	вас
Dat.	мені́	нам	тобі́	вам
Acc.	мене́	нас	тебе́	вас
Instr.	мно́ю	на́ми	тобо́ю	ва́ми
Loc.	мені́	нас	тобі́	вас

себе́[2] = -self (Acc.), is declined exactly like ти, тебе́.

The Indefinite Pronouns хтось and де́хто are declined like хто, -сь being a suffix and де- a prefix. де- can be separated from хто by a preposition, e.g.:—

де́ на ко́му, as well as на де́кому

The separation is obligatory for pronouns with the prefix ні-, e.g. ніхто́ = no one:—

Gen. ніко́го Dat. ніко́му Loc. ні на ко́му

When the prefix ні- is stressed, this pronoun means, '*there is* no one...', e.g. ні́кому да́ти = there is none (to whom) to give...

Notice also the declension of:—

скі́льки = how many
кі́лька = a few, some
де́кілька = a few
сті́льки = so many

which are declined like два (= two), e.g.:

скільк-о́х, -о́м, -ома́

[1]The forms beginning with н- are used after prepositions which govern the pronoun (i.e. not for pronouns being used as possessives). The Instrumental always has an initial н in Ukrainian.

[2]Concerning the stress in the Gen. (sg.) *after prepositions*, see the paragraph above on pp. 133-134.

кільканадцять = a few (between 10 and 20)
кількадеся́т = a few tens of

which are declined like п'ять (= five).

бага́то (Nom. and Acc.) = many, has—

Gen./Loc. багатьо́х
Dat. багатьо́м
Instr. багатьма́ and багатьома́.

The indefinite pronouns яки́йсь = some sort of, and чи́йсь = some one's, in the Gen. and Loc. plur. have a fill-vowel -о- before the suffix -сь, i.e. яки́хось, чи́їхось.

ADJECTIVES

Adjectives in Ukrainian are much simpler than in Russian. There are no separate predicative forms for most adjectives. It is true, a form ending in a consonant exists for the masculine singular only of just a few adjectives and this is mostly used predicatively; but it may be used attributively too, especially in poetry. The most common short forms are:—

варт	= worth, deserving	пе́вен	= certain, sure
ви́нен	= owing, in debt	по́вен	= full
го́ден	= able, fit	пови́нен	= obliged to
згоден	= agreeing, in agreement	потрі́бен	= necessary
		прав	= right
гото́в	= ready	непра́в	= wrong
жив	= alive	рад	= glad
здоро́в	= healthy	стар	= old
зе́лен	= green	я́сен	= bright, clear
ладе́н	= ready		

The declension of the adjective falls into only two main classes:—

1. The hard stems, including all stems in velars and *chuintantes*, and irrespective of whether they are finally stressed or not. All possessive adjectives in -ів, -ин, -ін, etc., are also declined throughout like hard-stem adjectives and have no special short endings, in contrast to Russian.

2. The soft stems, *(a)* ending in a soft consonant, *(b)* ending in -j-. Into this class also fall the adjectives derived from the names of animals, such as бара́ній (= ram's).

1. га́рний = beautiful

	SINGULAR *Masc.*	SINGULAR *Neut.*	SINGULAR *Fem.*	PLURAL *All Genders*
Nom.	га́рний	га́рне[1]	га́рна[1]	га́рні[1]
Gen.	га́рного		га́рної	га́рних
Dat.	га́рному		га́рній	га́рним
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	га́рне[1]	га́рну[1]	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	га́рним		га́рною	га́рними
Loc.	га́рному (-ім)		га́рній	га́рних

Like га́рний, all possessive adjectives, such as бра́тів, бра́тове (neut.), бра́това (fem.) = brother's, Gen. бра́тового (masc. and neut.), бра́тової (fem.); доччи́н, доччине́, доччина́ = daughter's, (from дочка́); and from a soft stem: коваліи́в, ковале́ве, ковале́ва = blacksmith's.

Similarly all surnames in -ський, e.g.:— Котляре́вський.

Before the adjectival ending -ський (and the neuter ending -ство) the combinations к, ч, ць + -ський, -ство give -цький, -цтво, e.g.:—

па́рубок	= young man,	adj.	парубо́цький,	noun	парубо́цтво
ткач	= weaver,	"	тка́цький,	"	тка́цтво
молоде́ць	= young man,	"	молоде́цький,	"	молоде́цтво

but х, ш, с are dropped before -ський, -ство, e.g.:—

птах = bird; пта́ство = birds
това́риш = comrade; товари́ський; товари́ство = company

while г, ж, з before -ський, -ство give -зький, -зтво, e.g.:—

убо́гий = poor убо́зтво = poverty
Пари́ж = Paris пари́зький
боягу́з = coward боягу́зтво

Similarly also all Past Participles Passive:—

зро́блений = done

[1]Uncontracted endings in the Nom. (sing. fem. and neut. and plur.) and Acc. (sing. fem. and neut. and plural inanimate) occur mainly in poetry: e.g.—

Sing. Nom. f. га́рная, си́няя, n. га́рнеє, си́неє, plur. га́рніі, си́ніі;
Sing. Acc. f. га́рную, си́нюю, n. га́рнеє, си́неє, plur. га́рніі, си́ніі .

2a. си́ній = blue

	SINGULAR *Masc.*	SINGULAR *Neut.*	SINGULAR *Fem.*	PLURAL *All Genders*
Nom.	си́ній	си́нє[1]	си́ня[1]	си́ні[1]
Gen.	си́нього		си́ньої	си́них
Dat.	си́ньому		си́ній	си́ним
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	си́нє[1]	си́ню[1]	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	си́ним		си́ньою	си́ними
Loc.	си́ньому (-ім)		си́ній	си́них

2b. безкра́ій = boundless

	SINGULAR *Masc.*	SINGULAR *Neut.*	SINGULAR *Fem.*	PLURAL *All Genders*
Nom.	безкра́їй	безкра́є	безкра́я	безкра́ї
Gen.	безкра́його		безкра́йої	безкра́їх
Dat.	безкра́йому		безкра́їй	безкра́їм
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	безкра́є	безкра́ю	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	безкра́їм		безкра́йою	безкра́їми
Loc.	безкра́йому (-ім)		безкра́їй	безкра́їх

Adjectives ending in -лиций have a mixed declension in the singular, but in the plural follow the hard declension:—

	SINGULAR *Masc.*	SINGULAR *Neut.*	SINGULAR *Fem.*
Nom.	білоли́ций	білоли́це	білоли́ця
Gen.	білоли́цього		білоли́цьої
Dat.	білоли́цьому		білоли́цій
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	білоли́це	білоли́цю
Instr.	білоли́цим		білоли́цьою
Loc.	білоли́цьому (-ім)		білоли́цій

A few nouns of adjectival form are declined like adjectives, e.g.:—

будівни́чий = builder
лю́тий = February

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The Comparative degree of an adjective in Ukrainian is formed by adding either -і́ший, -і́ша, -і́ше, e.g.:—

нови́й = new: нові́ший

or -ший, -ша, -ше, e.g.:—

слаби́й = weak: сла́бший

[1]See footnote on previous page.

1. га́рний = beautiful

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	га́рний	га́рне[1]	га́рна[1]	га́рні[1]
Gen.	га́рного		га́рної	га́рних
Dat.	га́рному		га́рній	га́рним
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	га́рне[1]	га́рну[1]	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	га́рним		га́рною	га́рними
Loc.	га́рному (-ім)		га́рній	га́рних

Like га́рний, all possessive adjectives, such as бра́тів, бра́тове (neut.), бра́това (fem.) = brother's, Gen. бра́тового (masc. and neut.), бра́тової (fem.); доччи́н, доччине́, доччина́ = daughter's, (from дочка́); and from a soft stem: ковалі́в, ковале́ве, ковале́ва = blacksmith's.

Similarly all surnames in -ський, e.g.:— Котляре́вський.

Before the adjectival ending -ський (and the neuter ending -ство) the combinations к, ч, ць + -ський, -ство give -цький, -цтво, e.g.:—

па́рубок	= young man,	adj.	паруббцький,	noun	паруббцтво
ткач	= weaver,	"	тка́цький,	"	тка́цтво
молоде́ць	= young man,	"	молоде́цький,	"	молоде́цтво

but х, ш, с are dropped before -ський, -ство, e.g.:—

птах = bird; пта́ство = birds
това́риш = comrade; товари́ський; товари́ство = company

while г, ж, з before -ський, -ство give -зький, -зтво, e.g.:—

убгий	= poor	убо́зтво	= poverty
Пари́ж	= Paris	пари́зький	
боягу́з	= coward	боягу́зтво	

Similarly also all Past Participles Passive:—

зробле́ний = done

[1]Uncontracted endings in the Nom. (sing. fem. and neut. and plur.) and Acc. (sing. fem. and neut. and plural inanimate) occur mainly in poetry: e.g.—

Sing. Nom. f. га́рная, си́няя, n. га́рнее, си́нее, plur. га́рні, си́ні;
Sing. Acc. f. га́рную, си́нюю, n. га́рнее, си́нее, plur. га́рні, си́ні .

2a. си́ній = blue

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	си́ній	си́нє[1]	си́ня[1]	си́ні[1]
Gen.	си́нього		си́ньої	си́ніх
Dat.	си́ньому		си́ній	си́нім
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	си́нє[1]	си́ню[1]	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	си́нім		си́ньою	си́німи
Loc.	си́ньому (-ім)		си́ній	си́ніх

2b. безкра́їй = boundless

	SINGULAR			PLURAL
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	безкра́їй	безкра́є	безкра́я	безкра́ї
Gen.	безкра́його		безкра́йої	безкра́їх
Dat.	безкра́йому		безкра́їй	безкра́їм
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	безкра́є	безкра́ю	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	безкра́їм		безкра́йою	безкра́їми
Loc.	безкра́йому (-ім)		безкра́їй	безкра́їх

Adjectives ending in -лиций have a mixed declension in the singular, but in the plural follow the hard declension:—

	SINGULAR		
	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*
Nom.	білоли́ций	білоли́це	білоли́ця
Gen.	білоли́цього		білоли́цьої
Dat.	білоли́цьому		білоли́цій
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	білоли́це	білоли́цю
Instr.	білоли́цим		білоли́цьою
Loc.	білоли́цьому (-ім)		білоли́цій

A few nouns of adjectival form are declined like adjectives, e.g.:—

будівни́чий = builder
лю́тий = February

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The Comparative degree of an adjective in Ukrainian is formed by adding either -і́ший, -і́ша, -і́ше, e.g.:—

нови́й = new: нові́ший

or -ший, -ша, -ше, e.g.:—

слаби́й = weak: сла́бший

[1]See footnote on previous page.

to the root. The choice is just a matter of usage, and some adjectives can have either, sometimes with a difference of meaning: рі́дший = rarer, рідкі́ший = finer (e.g. mesh).

Most adjectives ending in -кий, -екий or -окий lose the -к-, -ек- or -ок- and then add -ший to the real root. Consonantal changes can then take place, -с-ший giving -щий, e.g.:—

далéкий = distant, Comp. да́льший
глибóкий = deep, " гли́бший
висóкий = high, " ви́щий

while -з-ший, -г-ший and -ж-ший all give -жчий, e.g.:—

вузькúй = narrow, Comp. ву́жчий
дорогúй = dear, " дорóжчий
ду́жий = strong, " ду́жчий

However, there are exceptions, e.g.:—

легкúй = light, Comp. лéгший
гіркúй = bitter " гіркі́ший
дóвгий = long " дóвший
важкúй = heavy " ва́жчий
товстúй = fat " тóвщий

A third alternative, especially for the less common adjectives, is possible, however: that of using більш (= more) before the Positive adjective, e.g.:—

більш відповіда́льний = more responsible

The Superlative degree is formed by adding най- to the Comparative, e.g.:—

найнові́ший = (the) newest
найсла́бший = weakest
найви́щий = highest

Най- can also be prefixed to більш, hence:—

найбі́льш відповіда́льний = the most responsible

Notice the irregular:—

		Comp.	*Sup.*
дóбрий	= good	кра́щий or лі́пший	найкра́щий or найлі́пший
га́рний	= beautiful		
злий / пога́ний	= bad	гі́рший	найгі́рший
велúкий	= big	бі́льший	найбі́льший
малúй	= small	мéнший	наймéнший

All Comparative and Superlative adjectives follow the declension of hard stem (Positive) adjectives.

"Very" or "extremely" is usually expressed by ду́же, less frequently by the prefix пре-, e.g.:—

премýдрий = very wise

"Than" = як or ніж taking the same case after it as before it, e.g.:—

він кра́щий як ти = he is better than you
or він кра́щий ніж ти

or else "than" can be translated by one of the following three prepositions:—

за + Acc. (lit. = beyond), e.g.:—

Чи на сві́ті є краї́на ще міліша за наш край?
= Is there in the world a land dearer than ours?

над + Acc. (lit. = above), e.g.:—

Він дорóжчий мені́ над життя́.
= He is dearer to me than life itself.

від + Gen. (lit. = from), e.g.:—

Вона́ (є) кра́ща від Га́нни.
= She is more beautiful than Anne.

Rather better = трóхи лі́пший
Rather good = дóсіть (or довóлі) дóбрий
Rather fat = товстéнький (affectionate, = fat little...)

Less than = мéнше ніж (or як)...
The bigger, *the* better = що / чим } бі́льший, то / тим } лі́пший
As (big) *as* = так са́мо (велúкий) як
As soon as possible = як- / що- } -найскóрше
As fast as possible = що- / як- } -найшви́дше
The very best of all = са́мий найкра́щий (від всіх)
Too (long) = (за)на́дто (дóвгий)
The same as = той са́мий як

ADVERBS

Adverbs corresponding to hard-stem adjectives end in -o or -e, e.g.:—

дéшево = cheaply
бага́то = much
шви́дко = quickly
дóбре = well
зле = badly

But adverbs corresponding to adjectives in -ний mostly in -о, e.g.:—

дúвно = wonderfully гáрно = fine

Note: навмúсно *or* навмúсне = on purpose

Adverbs corresponding to adjectives in -ський, however, take either the form:—

по-украї́нському

or—

по-украї́нськи = in Ukrainian

Adverbs corresponding to soft-stem adjectives in -ній end in -ньо, e.g.:—

достáтньо = sufficiently

All Comparative and Superlative adverbs are the same in form as the Nom., Acc. sing. neut. of the corresponding Comparative or Superlative adjective, e.g.:—

крáще = better найкрáще = best

Those in -іше can drop the final -е, e.g.:—

частíш = more often

Adverbs of time, place, manner, etc. can have the most various forms and be derived from pronouns, nouns, numerals, etc.

Place:—

тут = here
там = there
звíдси = from here
звíдти = from there
тудú = thither
сюдú = hither
тудóю = that way
вгóру = up(wards)
вгорí = above, on top
скрíз, всю́ди = everywhere
додóму = home(ward)
дóма = at home
ínде = elsewhere
вниз = down(wards)
внизý = below

Time:—

незабáром = soon
сьогóдні = to-day
тепéр, нúні = now
тодí = then
вчóра = yesterday
зáвтра = to-morrow
щодня́ = every day
ínоді, ínколи = sometimes
тíльки що, щóйно, допíру = just
нікóли = never
вдень = by day
все, зáвжди = always

врéшті = at last
зáраз = at once, now
вночí = at night
ввéчері = in the evening
врáнці, рáнком = in the morning
двíчі = twice
улíтку = in summer
пóтім = afterwards
згóдом = later
надáлі = henceforward
зáгодя = in advance
мúттю = instantly
торíк = last year
вчáсно = in (on) time

Manner (see also above on formation of adverbs):—

байдýже = all the same
нарочúто = on purpose
так = thus
абúяк = somehow
сúдячи = sitting
лéжачки = lying
нарíзно = separately
гарáзд = well, skilfully
мимохíть = involuntarily
рáптом = suddenly
нúшком = quietly
ínакше = differently
крадькомá = stealthily
мóвчки = silently
босóніж = barefoot

Degree:—

вéльми, дýже = very
багáто = much
трóхи = little
лéдве = hardly
чимáло = considerably, quite a lot
дóсить = enough
дýжче = more strongly
втрóє = three times as much
здебíльшого = mostly
сáме = namely, just
взагалí = in general
тíльки = only
мáйже = almost
зóвсім = quite
принáймні = at least
нáдто = too much
більш = more
менш = less
дедалі = further, ever more + Comp.
чимрáз = ever more + Comp.

Interrogative:—

колú? = when?
де? = where?
чомý?, чогó? = why?
навíщо? = what for?
як? = how?
дóки? = till when?
скíльки? = how much?
кудú? = whither?
звíдки? (звідкíль?) (звідкíля?) = from where?
чи...? (interrogative particle)
хібá...? = ...really?
невжé? = not... really?

Not = не, but "no" = ні, and "yes" = так.

CONJUNCTIONS

These have no special forms.

Coördinating:—

і (й after a word ending in a vowel) = and
та = and (indicating a closer connection); but, why!
а = and (contrasting), but
але́ = but
(абó...) абó, (чи...) чи, (хоч...) хоч = (either ...) or
теж, такóж = also
проте́ = however
ба = Well!, Just look...!
як = as
ніж *or* як = than
тóбто = that is, to wit

то picks out the main clause, as in other Slavonic languages

зате́ = but then
однáк = however

Subordinating:—

бо = for
томý що = because
щоб = in order that
що = that
колú *or* як = if, when
якщó = if
пóки = until, while
мов, (не)нáче = like
бýцім, нíби, якбú = as if
хоч = although
так що = so that (consecutive)
раз = since, once
щóйно *or* лéдве = hardly, as soon as
скóро = as soon as, if only
хай = even if; in order that

PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions in Ukrainian may govern one, two, or three cases with corresponding variations of meaning. Compound prepositions govern the case usually associated with their last component (except із-за and з-під), but adverbs used as prepositions all govern the Genitive. The plain Instrumental is used for "through", as in Czech: ідý гáєм (I go through the wood). по- prefixed to prepositions of place indicates a wider locality.

With Gen.:—

без = without
з,[1] зі, зо (із before words beginning with с or з, especially when followed by another consonant) = out of, off
від (archaic: од) = from
у[2] (в) = by, at
для = for
бíля = by (the side of)
до = up to, to
крім = except, apart from
пíсля = after
прóти = against
рáди = for the sake of
сéред = among
за = in the time of (a king, etc.)
блúзько = near
навкóло = round
між[3] = among, between
із-зá = from behind
з-під = from under
кóло = near, by
уздóвж = along
опрíч = except
кінéць = at the end of
край = by

With Dat.:—

к = to, towards (archaic)
по = according to; по-мóєму = according to me
всýпереч = despite
завдякú = thanks to

With Acc.:—

у (в)[2] = into; on (of days)
на = on to, for

[1]Pronounced с [s] before unvoiced consonants: з тобóю = with you, pron. s to'boju. зі and зо are used before difficult consonant groups.

[2]With all its cases the preposition у/в alternates in spelling and pronunciation as follows:— у is written and pronounced as a full vowel between words ending and beginning with consonants; у or в are written and pronounced as *w* after a vowel and before a consonant; в is written and pronounced *v* between vowels and initially before a vowel. E.g.:—

Десь у хлібáх = somewhere in the corn
Ми булú у (в) садý = we were in the orchard
Булá в Одéсі = she was in Odessa
В очáх його́... = in his eyes...

Forms ув, ві, and уві are also used; e.g. уві сні = in a dream.

[3]More rarely: межú. Also помíж (colloq. промíж).

крізь = through
чéрез = through, because of; in (of time)
про = about, for
за = behind (motion), beyond; (in exchange) for; about, concerning; within (of time)
під = (to) under
пéред = (to) before
над = (to) above, (also in comparisons)
між[1] = (to) among, between
по = for (to get), up to (of numbers)
об = against, on
повз, мимо } = past
пóза = (to) beyond
з = about (of numbers, quantity)

With Instr:—

з,[2] зі, із = with
перед = before (rest)
за = behind (rest); according to, by
над(і) = over (rest)
під(і) = under (rest); near
між[1] = among (rest), between
поза = outside, beyond

With Loc.:—

у (в)[3] = in
на = on, at
при = near, by
о (об) = at (of time)
по = among, about; after; according to, by

The verbal prefixes ви-, пере-, роз- and уз- do not occur as prepositions.

The prefix з- is written с only before к, п, т, ф and х, e.g.:—

сфотографувáти = to photograph (Pfve.)

All other prefixes ending in a voiced consonant always retain it in spelling, and also in pronunciation, e.g.:—

від-, об-, над-

[1] See footnote 3 on p. 145.
[2] See footnote 1 on p. 145.
[3] See footnote 2 on p. 145.

The prefixes без- and роз- can be pronounced either без-, роз- or бес-, рос- before unvoiced consonants. Before *groups* of consonants these prefixes take -і- as the fill-vowel, e.g.:—

розіслáти = to send round

THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS

In Ukrainian the five main classes of the verb of Old Slavonic, divided according to the terminations of their Present tense, are preserved more completely than in Russian, because Ukrainian still distinguishes -е from -je, i.e. in Ukrainian spelling: е (= *phon.* ɛ) *is distinguished* from є (= jɛ).

On the other hand Ukrainian, like Russian, has greatly simplified the tense system of earlier Slavonic, for it too has lost—as well as the dual number—the Aorist and Imperfect tenses and more (declinable) participles than has Russian, namely the Present and Past Participles Active for most verbs and the Present Participle Passive, besides the old Past *Participle* Active in -л. Like Russian, it has an (indeclinable) Present and Past Gerund. It also has a fully conjugated Pluperfect tense, like West and South Slav. But the Supine has been lost completely.

The Passive voice is expressed either by a reflexive verb, or by the verb "to be" with a Past Participle Passive, or by the impersonal use of the 3rd person plural, as in other Slav languages. A fourth alternative is the use of the neut. sing. of a Past Participle Passive (sometimes with булó) and governing a direct object; cf. Polish. Thus we have such examples as:—

Він звéться[1] = he is called

[1]The reflexive suffix -ся *may* be abbreviated to -сь after the Infinitive and all genders and numbers of the Past tense (but, for masc. sg., only after those verbs with Past tenses ending in -в).E.g. узя́тись or узя́тися = to be taken, etc.; Past tense узя́всь or узя́вся, узялáсь or узялáся, etc.; but only—стерíгся = he was watching out.

Before this termination, in the 3rd pers. sg. of the Present tense of -е- verbs (see below) the (lost) final -ть reappears, e.g.:

зве or зовé = he calls, but звéться, зовéться pronounced with final long soft -цця [ʧ:a]. Similarly the ending -шся of the 2nd pers. sg. Present of reflexive verbs is pronounced -сся: учи́шся = you learn, pron. ʉ'ʧɨʂ:a (cf. p. 115, No. 12). The shorter -сь is more usual after Gerunds (see below).

Він був забитий = he was killed
Його забили = he was killed
Широку громадськість було ознайомлено з проєктом = the general public was informed of the proposal
А їм неначе рот зашито = but they kept mum (lit. "to them as if mouth sewn up")

The only true simple tense in Ukrainian is the *Present* (of Imperfective verbs) or Present-Future (future in meaning, of Perfective verbs). It has the following personal endings:—

Sing. 1 -у or -ю
2 -ш
3 no ending, or -ть for all i-verbs, reflexive verbs and the "athematic" verbs.

Plur. 1 -мо or -м
2 -те
3 -ть

The first three classes of verbs join the endings of the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. and the 1st and 2nd plur. to their stems with the vowel -е- (stressed or unstressed), which appears as -є- in Class III after vowel stems. The fourth class uses in these persons the vowel -и- (-ї- after vowel stems).

In the 3rd pers. plur. the joining vowel is -у- for Classes I-III (-ю- after vowels and in Class III, except after *chuintantes*), and -я- in Class IV (-а- after *chuintantes*).

(The few athematic verbs (Class V) are best learnt separately and treated as irregular verbs.)

Owing to the hardening of р and л before the phoneme е, verbs in Class III with stem in -р- or -л- *apparently* belong to Class I in all but the 1st pers. sing. and 3rd pers, plur., e.g.:—

орю́	= I plough	оремо́	1st pers. plur.
оре́ш	2nd pers. sing.	ореті́	2nd pers. plur.
оре́	3rd pers. sing.	орю́ть	3rd pers. plur.

(Infinitive: ора́ти)

Likewise:—

колю́ = I pierce, prick
ко́леш 2nd pers. sing. } with medium л!
ко́ле 3rd pers. sing. }
ко́лють 3rd pers. plur.

(Infinitive: колоти)

Velar stems of Class I A. a.[1], e.g. пече́, пекти́ (= to bake) have, by analogy, transferred the 1st Palatalization also to the 1st pers. sing. and 3rd pers. plur. Present before the endings -у and -уть, where it is "unnecessary"; hence we have—

печу́, печу́ть
мо́жу, мо́жуть from могти́ = to be able

Labial stems of Class IV (A and B)[1] insert the л before the ending of the 3rd pers. plur. as well as before that of the 1st pers. sing. Pres., e.g.:—

люби́ти = to love, has люблю́ (1st pers. sing.) and лю́блять (3rd pers. plur.).

So also:—

терпі́ти = to suffer, has терплю́, те́рплять.

(This л also appears in the Pres. Gerund: лю́блячи (= loving), the Pres. Participle: ро́блячий (= working), and in the Past Participle Pass.: лю́блений. See below.)

All *Infinitives* have been regularized in Ukrainian, the ending -ти being applied to all stems, e.g.:—

нести́	= to carry	сі́сти	= to sit down (Pfve.)
те́рти	= to rub	лі́зти	= to climb
сі́кти	= to hew	кра́сти	= to steal
могти́	= to be able	па́сти	= to fall
волокти́	= to drag (Pfve.)	ї́сти	= to eat
лягти́	= to lie down (Pfve.)		etc.

As the Infinitive is no guide in Ukrainian for the formation of the Present, it is easier, especially for comparative purposes, to classify the verbs according to their Presents, with subdivisions according to their Infinitives, as in the scheme we use for Old Slavonic.

[1]See p. 150.

Classification of Ukrainian Verbs according to their Presents, with Subdivisions according to their Infinitives

	3rd pers. sg. Pres.	*Infinitive*	
I.A.a.	несé	нестú[1]	= to carry. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
b.	ревé	ревтú	= to roar
	пливé	плистú	= to float. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., formerly vowel stem.
B.a.	берé	брáти	= to take. Infin. in -ати, consonantal stem.
b.	рве	рвáти	= to tear. Infin. in -ати, originally a vowel stem.
II.	двúне	двúнути	= to move (Pfve.). *n*-stem.

III. Presents with *-je*.

1. Primary verbs.

A.a.	знáє[2]	знáти	= to know. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., vowel stem.
b.	мéле	молóти	= to grind. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
B.a.	сíє	сíяти	= to sow. Infin. in -яти, vowel stem.
b.	орé	орáти	= to plough. Infin. in -ати, consonantal stem.

2. Derived verbs. All vowel stems.

A.a.	дýмає	дýмати	= to think. *a*-stem.
b.	жовтíє	жовтíти	= to grow (or show) yellow. *i*-stem, from stem in -ѣ-.

[1]So also: печé, пектú = to bake; умрé, умéрти = to die (Pfve.); почнé, почáти = to begin (Pfve.).

[2]Similarly: чýє, чýти = to hear, feel; мúє, мúти = to wash.

B.	будýє	будувáти	= to build. -у- Pres. stem., -ува- (hard) Infin. stem.
	горю́є	горювáти	= to sorrow, mourn. -ю- Pres. stem., -юва- (soft) Infin. stem.
IV.A.	хвáлить	хвалúти	= to praise. -и- throughout.
B.	вертúть	вертíти	= to turn. -и- in Pres., -і- (from ѣ) in Infin.
	лежúть	лежáти	= to lie. -и- in Pres., -а- (from ѣ after *chuintante*) in Infin.

V. Athematic *-m* verbs—only four roots (see below for full conjugation pp. 162-164).

дам (1st pers. sing.) дасть, дáти = to give (Pfve.)
їм " " " їсть, їсти = to eat

The Future Tense and the Aspects

There are two ways of forming the Future Tense for Imperfective verbs in Ukrainian. One way is, as in Russian, with the Future tense of the verb "to be" (бýти) followed by the Infinitive, e.g.:—

Sing.	1	бýду писáти	= I shall write,
	2	бýдеш "	etc.
	3	бýде "	
Plur.	1	бýдем(о) "	
	2	бýдете "	
	3	бýдуть "	

The more characteristic way, however, is by adding the suffixes: -му, -меш, -ме, -мем(о), -мете, -муть to the Infinitive. These suffixes are an abbreviated form of the Perfective Present-Future of the verb йняти, йму, etc. (= to take). Hence we have:—

Sing.	1	писáтиму	= I shall write,
	2	писáтимеш	etc.
	3	писáтиме	
Plur.	1	писáтимемо	
	2	писáтимете	
	3	писáтимуть	

The reflexive particle -ся is put *after* these suffixes, e.g.:—

грáтимуться = they will play

The Future of Perfective verbs is Present in form, or in other words, the Present of Perfective

verbs is normally future in meaning, as in Russian and West Slav.

The Perfective form of a verb is sometimes represented by another form of the same root, e.g.:—

пускáти = to allow(Impfve.), пустúти (Pfve.)
Future: пущý, пýстиш, etc.

лягáти = to lie down(Impfve.), лягтú (Pfve.)
Future: ля́жу, ля́жеш

Only a few verbs have Perfectives formed from a different root:

брáти = to take (Impfve.), взя́ти (Pfve.)
Future: візьмý, вíзьмеш

ловúти = to catch (Impfve.), піймáти (Pfve.)
Future: піймáю, піймáеш

Often -нути is added, e.g.:—

стýкати = to knock (Impfve.) стýкнути (Pfve.)
Future: стýкну

грúмати = to bang, yell at, roar (Impfve.), грúмнути (Pfve.)
Future: грúмну

Sometimes only the stress is changed, e.g.:—

здибáти = to meet (Impfve.) здúбати (Pfve.)
Pres.: здибáю
Future: здúбаю

викликáти = to call out (Impfve.), вúкликати (Pfve.)
Future: вúкличу

One of the commonest ways of creating a Perfective verb is by adding a prefix, e.g.:—

писáти = to write (Impfve.), написáти (Pfve.)
Future: напишý, напúшеш

робúти = to do, work (Impfve.), зробúти (Pfve.)
Future: зроблю́, зрóбиш

In the few cases where the original simple verb is Perfective, the Imperfective is formed by changing the Infinitive ending or by lengthening the stem in some way, e.g.:—

купúти = to buy (Pfve.) Future: куплю́
купувáти = " " (Impfve.) Present: купýю

дáти = to give (Pfve.) Future: дам
давáти = " " (Impfve.) Present: даю́

Perfective verbs compounded with prefixes usually have such extended forms for their Imperfective aspects, e.g.:—

підписáти = to sign (Pfve.) Fut.: підпишý
підпúсувати = " " (Impfve.) Pres.: підпúсую

відмінúти = to change (Pfve.) Fut.: відміню́
відмíнювати = " " (Impfve.) Pres.: відмíнюю

(In contrast to Russian, Ukrainian has only two types of such extensions:— -увати for hard stems, -ювати for soft stems, causing yotation for *i*-verbs: носúти = to carry, винóшувати = to carry, or wear, out. Frequentative verbs generally have these endings.)

But some merely change the ending to -ати or -яти, e.g.:—

позúчити = to lend (Pfve.) Fut.: позúчу
позичáти = " " (Impfve.) Pres.: позичáю

розрізнúти = to distinguish (Pfve.) Fut.: розрізню́
розрізня́ти = " " (Impfve.) Pres.: розрізня́ю

There are no regular ways of forming aspects from a given type of stem. The student should read widely and learn each verb in both its aspects and thus learn the usage for each verb by observation.

The Past Tense

The Past Tense in Ukrainian is formed by adding to the Infinitive less -ти (of either aspect) the following endings:—

-в for the masc. sing.
-ла for the fem. sing.
-ло for the neut. sing.
-ли for all genders in the plural.

The *person* has to be indicated by a pronoun or noun, as this tense has no personal terminations (cf. English past tenses). On the other hand the termination varies according to the gender and number of the subject, this tense being derived from the old Past Participles Active in -лъ. The masc. sing. is now spelt with a final -в which sounds as a final *u̯* or *w* (see "Pronunciation" above).

As regards meaning, the Perfective Past indicates a completed action in the past, while the Imperfective

Past denotes a continuous or repeated action in the past, as in other Slavonic languages.

Verbs whose root ends in с, з, к, г, б and р have no termination in the masc. sing., e.g.:—

рости́	= to grow:	ріс	masc.,	росла́	fem.
нести́	= to carry:	ніс	"	несла́	"
гри́зти	= to gnaw:	гриз	"	гри́зла	"
пекти́	= to bake:	пік	"	пекла́	"
могти́	= to be able:	міг	"	могла́	"
гребти́	= to dig, row:	гріб	"	гребла́	"
ме́рти	= to die:	мер	"	ме́рла	"

(Pres. 3rd sg. мре!)

Notice the regular vowel alternations: і in closed syllables, о or е in open syllables in the examples above. ліг from лягти́ (= to lie down, Pfve.), запрі́г from запрягти́ (= to harness, Pfve.) are formed by analogy with these examples. Мер is an exception, being derived from мьр-.

Verbs whose root ends in a dental -т or -д, lose it before the terminations of the Past tense, as in other East and South Slav languages, e.g.:—

мести́ = to sweep, root мет-, Past: мів m., мела́ f.
вести́ = to lead, " вед-, " вів m., вела́ f.

Verbs of Class II in -нути *may* drop the syllable -ну- in the Past tense, if their root terminates in a consonant and the syllable -ну- is not stressed and usually if the verb does not have a momentary meaning. But these rules are not consistently observed:—

тягну́ти	(Impfve.)	= to pull: тягну́в, тягну́ла
мину́ти	(Pfve.)	= to pass: мину́в, мину́ла
сла́бнути	(Impfve.)	= to grow weak: слаб, сла́бла
посбхнути or посбхти	(Pfve.)	= to dry up: посбхнув, посбхнула or посбх, посбхла
зблі́днути	(Pfve.)	= to grow pale: зблід, зблі́дла
кри́кнути	(Pfve.)	= to give a shout: кри́кнув, кри́кнула

Note the irregular Past of іти́ or йти (= to go), Pres. іду́ or йду:—

ішо́в or йшов masc., ішла́/йшла fem., ішло́/йшло neut., ішли́/йшли plur.

(No rule can be given about the shift of stress on to the terminations.)

The Pluperfect

The Pluperfect tense is formed by adding the forms of the Past tense of бу́ти in the appropriate gender and number to the ordinary Past tense, as in West and South Slav, e.g.:—

я був малюва́в = I had painted or I had been painting
вона́ ходи́ла була́ = she had (often) gone
вони́ ходи́ли були́ = they had (often) gone
ти була́ зроби́ла = you (fem.) had done

The Conditional

This merely has the form of the Past tense of either aspect with the addition of the auxiliary би or б for all persons. би is written after words ending in a consonant, б after words ending in a vowel. E.g.:

Я мав би or Я б мав = I would have
вона́ б ма́ла = she would have
він би сказа́в = he would say
вона́ хоті́ла б = she would like to

The *Past Conditional* is formed by adding the (variable) Past tense of бу́ти (= to be) to the ordinary Conditional, e.g.:—

Я був би мав = I would have had
вона́ була́ б ма́ла = she would have had
він би це давно́ був зроби́в = he would have done this long ago

The Imperative

Besides forms for the 2nd pers. sing. and plur., the Imperative in Ukrainian has forms for the 1st pers. plural, as in South and West Slav (= let us...). The 3rd pers. sing. and plur. of the Imperative is expressed by—

(не)ха́й + 3rd pers. sing. or plur. Pres. Impfve. or Pres./Fut. Pfve., e.g.:—

нехай or хай гра́є = let him play!—Impfve.
нехай or хай ві́зьмуть = let them take—Pfve.

Let us... can also be expressed by дава́йте, as in Russian, e.g.:—

дава́йте малюва́ти = let us paint!

The endings for both aspects, always added to the Present stem, are:—

	(a) Stressed or unstressed	*(b)* after vowels	*(c)* after the labials б, п, в, м, ф, the *chuintantes* ж, ш, ч, щ, and after р	*(d)* after all dentals (д, т, з, с, л, н)
2nd pers. sing.	-и	-й	—	-ь
1st pers. pl.	-ім(о)	-ймо	-мо	-ьмо
2nd pers. pl.	-іть	-йте	-те	-ьте

The endings *(a)* are used stressed for verbs which have final stress in 1st pers. sing. Pres., but are added to the stem as it appears in the 2nd pers. sing. Pres. or Pres./Future, e.g.:—

іду́, іде́ш = I go: Imper. іди́, іді́м(о), іді́ть
пущу́, пу́стиш = I shall allow: Imper. пусти́, пусті́м(о), пусті́ть

The endings *(a)* are unstressed with verbs with a stressed prefix, e.g.:—

ви́беру = I shall choose: Imper. ви́бери, ви́берім(о), ви́беріть

and also with verbs with the syllable -ну- after a consonant in the root (Class II), e.g.:—

кри́кну = I shall give a shout: Imper. кри́кни, кри́кнім(о), кри́кніть

as well as with verbs with stems in a consonant + р or л, e.g.:—

підкре́слю = I shall underline: Imper. підкре́сли
прові́трю = I shall air: Imper. прові́три

The endings *(b)* are used for verbs with vowel stems:—

гра́ти = to play, Pres. гра́ю, Imper. грай, гра́ймо, гра́йте
купува́ти = to buy, Pres. купу́ю, Imper. купу́й, купу́ймо, купу́йте
дя́кувати = to thank, Pres. дя́кую, Imper. дя́куй, дя́куймо, дя́куйте
вимі́рювати = to measure out, Pres. вимі́рюю, Imper. вимі́рюй, вимі́рюймо, вимі́рюйте

The endings *(c)* are used only after the labials, *chuintantes* and р, e.g.:—

ста́вити = to put, Pres. ста́влю, Imper. став, ста́вмо, ста́вте
ру́шити (Pfve.) = to move, touch, Fut. ру́шу, Imper. руш, ру́шмо, ру́ште
пові́рити (Pfve.) = to believe, Fut. пові́рю, Imper. пові́р, пові́рмо, пові́рте

The endings *(d)* occur only after the plosive (д, т), sibilant (с, з), liquid (л) and nasal (н) dentals, e.g.:—

сі́сти (Pfve.) = to sit down, Fut. ся́ду, Imper. сядь, ся́дьмо, ся́дьте
чи́стити = to clean, Pres. чи́щу, чи́стиш, Imper. чисть, чи́стьмо, чи́стьте
пові́сити (Pfve.) = to hang, Fut. пові́шу, пові́сиш, Imper. пові́сь, пові́сьмо, пові́сьте
ви́зволити (Pfve.) = to liberate, Fut. ви́зволю, Imper. ви́зволь, ви́звольмо, ви́звольте
ста́ти (Pfve.) = to become, begin, Fut. ста́ну, Imper. стань, ста́ньмо, ста́ньте

Roots in -г and -к, by analogy with the Present, undergo the *1st* Palatalization (not the 2nd, as in Old Slavonic, Serbocr., Sln., Czech) in all persons of the Imperative, e.g.:—

лягти́ (Pfve.) = to lie down, Fut. ля́жу, ля́жеш, Imper. ляж, ля́жмо, ля́жте
бі́гти = to run, Pres. біжу́, біжи́ш, Imper. біжи́, біжі́м(о), біжі́ть
пекти́ = to bake, Pres. печу́, пече́ш, Imper. печи́, печі́м(о), печі́ть

Verbs of Class III with stems in с, з and х, follow in their Imperative the consonantal changes caused by yotation in their Present, changing с, з, х to ш, ж, and ш respectively, e.g.:—

писа́ти = to write, Pres. пишу́, пи́шеш, Imper. пиши́, пиші́м(о), пиші́ть
каза́ти = to say, Pres. кажу́, ка́жеш, Imper. кажи́, кажі́м(о), кажі́ть
бреха́ти = to tell lies, Pres. брешу́, бре́шеш, Imper. бреши́, бреші́м(о), бреші́ть

The Gerunds (Active)

These, as in Russian, can only refer to the subject of the sentence and qualify the main verb.

The *Present Gerund* is obtained from the 3rd pers. plur. Pres. (Impfve.) by substituting -чи for the final -ть. The position of the stress is uncertain, e.g.:—

беру́ть	= they take	беручи́	= taking
ка́жуть	= they say	ка́жучи	etc.
виробля́ють	= they manufacture	виробля́ючи	
ба́чать	= they see	ба́чачи	
сидя́ть	= they sit	си́дячи	
летя́ть	= they fly	летячи́	
сплять	= they sleep	сплячи́	

The Present Gerund can qualify a verb in any tense and denotes an action or state contemporary with that of the main verb.

The *Past Gerund* is formed by adding -ши, which is never stressed, to the masc. sing. of the Past tense of either aspect, e.g.:—

ніс	= he was carrying	ні́сши	= having carried
купува́в	= he was buying	купува́вши	= having been buying
купи́в	= he bought	купи́вши	= having bought

It indicates an action previous to that of the main verb, which can be in any tense.

A few verbs, especially бу́ти, have their Past Gerund used in the sense of a Present Gerund, e.g.:—

бу́вши = being, is used for бу́дучи.

Reflexive verbs usually have the short form of the suffix, -сь, in both their Gerunds, e.g.:—

се́рдячись = getting angry
схили́вшись = having leant down

The Participles (Verbal adjectives)

In Ukrainian only the Past Participle Passive can be regularly formed from all (transitive) verbs.

The *Present Participle Active* is rarely used. It is formed by adding (in the case of only a few verbs) -чий, -ча, -че to the 3rd pers. plur. Pres. after removing the final -ть, e.g.:—

працю́ючий = working
зроста́ючий = growing together

A few compound intransitive perfective verbs have *Past Participles Active* in -лий, -ла, -ле, e.g.:—

почорні́лий = blackened
нави́слий = hanging over

The *Past Participle Passive*, formed from the Infinitive stem of transitive verbs only, is characterized by the endings either -ний, -на, -не or -тий, -та, -те.

I. The latter endings are used only with:—

(a) monosyllabic roots containing -и-, -і-, -у-, -я-, -а- after a *chuintante*, and -ер-, e.g.:

би́ти	= to beat,	Past Part. Pass.	би́тий = beaten,
грі́ти	= to warm,	" " "	грі́тий etc.
взу́ти	= to put on (footwear) (Pfve.),	" " "	взу́тий
взя́ти	= to take (Pfve.),	" " "	взя́тий
жа́ти	= to harvest,	" " "	жа́тий
те́рти	= to rub,	" " "	те́ртий

(b) verbs with -оло- and -оро- in their Infinitive stem, which have alternative forms in -ний, e.g.:—

коло́ти	= to prick,	Past Part. Pass.	ко́лотий or ко́лений
поро́ти	= to rip,	" " "	по́ротий or по́рений
моло́ти	= to grind,	" " "	мо́лотий or ме́лений

(c) verbs of Class II with Infinitives in -нути, which also have alternative forms in -ний, e.g.:—

ки́нути = to throw (Pfve.), Past Part. Pass. ки́нутий or ки́нений
верну́ти = to return (trans.), Past Part. Pass. ве́рнутий or ве́рнений

II. All other verbs have Past Participles Passive in -ний.

Verbs with Infinitives in -ати (-яти) have Past Part. Pass. ending in -аний, -яний *(not stressed)*, e.g.:—

писа́ти	= to write,	Past Part. Pass.	пи́саний
ора́ти	= to plough,	" " "	бра́ний
держа́ти	= to hold,	" " "	де́ржаний
пита́ти	= to ask,	" " "	пи́таний
розрізня́ти	= to distinguish,	" " "	розрі́зняний

Verbs with Infinitives in -ува́ти or -юва́ти have Past Part. Pass. ending in -о́ваний or -ьо́ваний (-йо́ваний after a vowel) respectively, while those in ´-увати, ´-ювати (unstressed) have ´-уваний, ´-юваний:—

дарува́ти	= to present,	Past Part. Pass.	даро́ваний
малюва́ти	= to paint,	" " "	мальо́ваний
копіюва́ти	= to copy,	" " "	копійо́ваний
пока́зувати	= to show,	" " "	пока́зуваний
вигото́влювати	= to prepare,	" " "	вигото́влюваний

All other types of verbs have Past Part. Pass. in -ений (-єний after vowels), e.g.:—

па́сти	= to graze,	Past	Part.	Pass.	па́сений
плести́	= to weave,	"	"	"	пле́тений
кра́сти	= to steal,	"	"	"	кра́дений
сі́кти	= to hew,	"	"	"	сі́чений*
пекти́	= to bake,	"	"	"	пе́чений*
запрягти́	= to harness,	"	"	"	запря́жений*

Verbs of Class IV undergo the consonantal changes caused by yotation before the termination -ений, hence we have:—

люби́ти	= to love	лю́блений
купи́ти	= to buy	ку́плений
погаси́ти	= to extinguish	пога́шений
вази́ти	= to strike, impress	вра́жений
вози́ти	= to convey	во́жений
носи́ти	= to carry	но́шений
плати́ти	= to pay	пла́чений
грома́дити	= to rake up	грома́ждений
мости́ти	= to lay, spread	мо́щений
верті́ти	= to twist	ве́рчений
ви́їздити	= to ride all over	ви́їжджений **
заси́діти	= to hatch	заси́джений
ви́гоїти	= to heal	ви́гоєний

but no change in:—

хвали́ти	= to praise	хва́лений
вари́ти	= to cook	ва́рений
чини́ти	= to act, do	чи́нений
ба́чити	= to see	ба́чений

(Students of Russian should note that these Past Part. Passive never have a double -н- in the termination and that they have no corresponding special predicative (short) forms. Adjectives in -енний or -анний (-янний) correspond to adjectives in -able in English, e.g.:—

незчисле́нний = uncountable, countless
несказа́нний = ineffable

or else those in -енний are augmentatives, e.g.:—

силе́нний very strong, mighty

From these Past Participles Passive are formed the *Verbal Nouns* in -ання, -ення (or in -і́ння when ending is stressed), e.g.:—

*with 1st Palatalization.
**also = broken in (of a horse)

жада́ння = longing
розхо́дження = divergence, discrepancy
відно́шення = relation

but—

носі́ння = carrying

Verbs in -увати, -ювати in the Infinitive have Verbal Nouns mostly in -ування, -ювання, e.g.:—

друкува́ння = printing
малюва́ння = painting

Examples of the two Conjugations of Regular Verbs

1. *-e-* type (Classes I, II and III).

	Class I. пасти́ [1] = to graze	Class III. пита́ти [2] = to ask
PRESENT		
Sing. 1	пасу́	пита́ю
2	пасе́ш	пита́єш
3	пасе́	пита́є
Plur. 1	пасемо́	пита́ємо
2	пасете́	пита́єте
3	пасу́ть	пита́ють
IMPERATIVE		
Sing. 2	пасі́	пита́й
Plur. 1	пасі́м	пита́ймо
2	пасі́ть	пита́йте
GERUNDS		
Present	пасучи́	пита́ючи
Past	па́сши	пита́вши
PARTICIPLE		
Past Pass.	па́сений	пи́таний
PAST TENSE	пас, па́сла, па́сло	пита́в, пита́ла, пита́ло

[1]So also verbs of Class II.

[2]Consonantal stems belonging to this Class III undergo the changes due to the *j* in *all* persons of the Present and Imperative: писа́ти = to write, Pres. пишу́, пи́шеш, пи́ше, etc., 3rd plur. пи́шуть; пиши́!

2. -*i*-type (Class IV)

	хвали́ти = to praise	го́їти = to heal
PRESENT		
Sing. 1	хвалю́	го́ю
2	хва́лиш	го́їш
3	хва́лить	го́їть
Plur. 1	хва́лимо	го́їмо
2	хва́лите	го́їте
3	хва́лять	го́ять
IMPERATIVE		
Sing. 2	хвали́	гой
Plur. 1	хвалі́м	го́ймо
2	хвалі́ть	го́йте
GERUNDS		
Present	хва́лячи	
Past	хвали́вши	го́ївши
PARTICIPLE		
Past Pass.	хва́лений	го́єний
PAST TENSE	хвали́в, хвали́ла, хвали́ло	го́їв, го́їла, го́їло

Roots in *chuintantes* change the endings -ю (1st sing.) and -ять (3rd plur.) into -у and -ать respectively, e.g.:—

кричáти = to shout: кричý, кричáть

Before the -ю of the 1st pers. sing.* of the Present of *i*-verbs, consonantal changes caused by the -*j*- take place, as well as in the Past Participle Passive (see above): hence—

сидíти = to sit: сиджý
летíти = to fly: лечý

Irregular Verbs

Class V (the "athematic" verbs):—

	бýти = to be	дáти = to give (Pfve.)
PRESENT		
Sing. 1	є	
2	є	
3	є	
Plur. 1	є	
2	є	
3	є	

* See p. 149 concerning the 3rd pers. plural of *labial* stems (only) and their Present Gerund and Present Participles.

FUTURE		
Sing. 1	бýду	дам
2	бýдеш	дасú
3	бýде	дасть
Plur. 1	бýдемо	дамó
2	бýдете	дастé
3	бýдуть	дадýть
IMPERATIVE		
Sing. 2	будь	дай
Plur. 1	бýдьмо	дáймо
2	бýдьте	дáйте
GERUNDS		
Present	бýвши	
Past	(за)бýвши[1]	дáвши
PARTICIPLE		
Past Passive	(за)бýтий[2]	дáний
PAST TENSE	був, булá, булó; булú	дав, далá

	ї́сти = to eat з'ї́сти (Pfve.)	оповíстú = to relate (Pfve.)[3]
PRESENT		
Sing. 1	їм	
2	їсú	
3	їсть	
Plur. 1	їмó	
2	їстé	
3	їдя́ть	
FUTURE		
Sing. 1	з'їм	оповíм
2	з'їсú	оповісú
3	з'їсть	оповíсть
Plur. 1	з'їмó	оповімó
2	з'їстé	оповістé
3	з'їдя́ть	оповідя́ть

[1] = having forgotten.
[2] = forgotten
[3] Similarly: відповíстú = to answer, розповíстú = to tell, narrate.

Imperative		
Sing. 2	ї́ж	(оповіда́й)[1]
Plur. 1	ї́жмо	(оповіда́ймо)[1]
2	ї́жте	(оповіда́йте)[1]
GERUNDS		
Present	ї́дячи́	
Past	ї́вши	оповї́вши
PARTICIPLE		
Past Passive	ї́джений	оповї́джений
PAST TENSE	ї́в, ї́ла	оповї́в, оповіла́

Other irregular and noteworthy verbs

хоті́ти (= to want) has an irregular Present of the *e*-class:—

Sing. 1	хо́чу	Plur. 1	хо́чемо
2	хо́чеш (or colloq. хоч)	2	хо́чете
3	хо́че	3	хо́чуть

бі́гти (= to run, Impfve.) has a Present of the *i*-type (Class IV):—

Sing. 1	біжу́	Plur. 1	біжимо́
2	біжи́ш	2	біжите́
3	біжи́ть	3	біжа́ть

PAST біг, бі́гла

IMPERATIVE біжи́, біжі́мо, біжі́ть

(The Frequentative бі́гати, бі́гаю is regular.)

Notice also:—

Class I	*Present or Pfve. Future*	*Past*
ду́ти = to blow	дму, дмеш	дув, ду́ла
йня́ти = to take (Impfve.)	йму, йме́ш	йняв, йняла́
взя́ти = to take (Pfve.)	візьму́, ві́зьмеш	взяв
обійня́ти = to embrace (Pfve.)	обійму́, обі́ймеш	обійня́в, обійняла́
підня́ти = to lift (Pfve.)	підніму́, підні́меш	підня́в
but—		
-йма́ти = to take (Impfve.)	-йма́ю, -йма́єш (regular)	

[1]From the Imperfective оповіда́ти.

	Pres. or Pfve. Fut.	*Past*
бра́ти = to take (Impfve.)	беру́, бере́ш	брав, бра́ла
жа́ти = to reap	жну, жнеш	жав
поча́ти = to begin (Pfve.)	почну́, почне́ш	поча́в
жа́ти = to press	жму, жмеш	жав
м'я́ти = to crumple	мну, мнеш	м'яв
кля́сти = to curse	кляну́, кляне́ш	кляв, кляла́
зва́ти = to call	зву, звеш or зову́, зове́ш	звав
сса́ти = to suck	ссу, ссеш	ссав
могти́[1] = to be able	мо́жу, мо́жеш	міг, могла́
лягти́ = to lie down (Pfve.)	ля́жу, ля́жеш	ліг, лягла́
волокти́ = to drag	волочу́, волоче́ш	волі́к, волокла́
реві́ти or ревти = to roar	реву́, реве́ш	реві́в, реві́ла or рів, ревла́
плисти́ or пливти́ = to float	пливу́, пливе́ш	плив, плила́
сі́сти = to sit down (Pfve.)	ся́ду, ся́деш	сів, сі́ла
гна́ти = to drive	жену́, жене́ш	гнав
тка́ти = to weave	тчу, тчеш	ткав
уме́рти = to die (Pfve.)	умру́, умре́ш	уме́р, -ла
гребти́ = to row	гребу́, гребе́ш	гріб, гребла́
забу́ти = to forget (Pfve.)	забу́ду, забу́деш	забу́в, забу́ла
кла́сти = to put	кладу́, кладе́ш	клав
густи́ or гуді́ти = to buzz, hoot	гуду́, гуде́ш	гув, гула́ or гуді́в, гуді́ла
жи́ти = to live	живу́, живе́ш	жив, жила́
Class II		
досягти́ = to reach (Pfve.)	досягну́, дося́гнеш	досяг
(по)ді́ти = to put (carelessly) (Pfve.)	(по)ді́ну, (по)ді́неш	(по)ді́в
ста́ти = to become (Pfve.)	ста́ну, ста́неш	став
Class III		
ма́ти = to have	ма́ю, ма́єш	мав, ма́ла (Regular)
ли́ти / лля́ти = to pour	ллю, ллєш	лив, лила́, Imper. лий

[1]Notice the stress in (до)помогти́ = to help (Pfve.): Future: поможу́, помо́жеш, Past поміг, помогла́, Imperative поможи́!

	Pres. or Pfve. Fut.	*Past*
кува́ти = to forge	кую́, куєш	кува́в
дава́ти = to give	даю́, даєш	дава́в
пи́ти* = to drink	п'ю, п'єш	пив, пила́, Imper. пий
полоти = to weed	полю́, по́леш	полов
колоти = to prick	колю́, ко́леш	колов
сла́ти = to send	шлю, шлеш	слав
ся́ти or ся́яти = to shine	ся́ю, ся́єш	сяв or ся́яв

*So also ви́ти = to wind, twist, Pres. в'ю, в'єш, Imper. вий; би́ти = to strike, Pres. б'ю, б'єш, Imper. бий.

The labials before the ' are pronounced *hard:* pju, vju, bju, etc. Notice the alternative stress in the 2nd pers. sing. of the Future of the compound розби́ти = to smash (Pfve.), Fut. розіб'ю́, розіб'є́ш, etc. Note that ви́ти = to howl, ми́ти = to wash, ри́ти = to dig, and also ши́ти = to sew, are all regular (Class III 1.A.2) in Ukrainian:

Pres. ви́ю, ви́єш, etc., ми́ю, ми́єш, etc.
ри́ю, ри́єш, etc., ши́ю, ши́єш, etc.
Past: вил, ви́ла, etc.; Imper. вий! etc.

Class IV.

спа́ти = to sleep	сплю, спиш (сплять)	спав

стоя́ти = to stand has—Imperative: стій, сті́ймо (otherwise regular). Pres.: стою́, стої́ш.

Verbs of Going and Conveying

To go (on foot):

Impfve.: іти́ — Pfve.: піти́
Pres.: іду́, іде́ш — Fut.: піду́, пі́деш
Past: йшов, йшла (ішо́в, ішла́ after a consonant, etc.) — пішо́в, пішла́, пішло́
Imper.: іди́ — піди́

Frequentative: ходи́ти
Pres.: ходжу́, хо́диш
Past: ходи́в, ходи́ла
Imper.: ходи́, ході́м, ході́ть

To go (be conveyed):

Impfve.: ї́хати — Pfve.: пої́хати
Pres.: ї́ду, ї́деш — Fut.: пої́ду, пої́деш
Past: ї́хав — пої́хав
Imper.: ї́дь — поїдь

Frequentative: ї́здити
Pres.: ї́жджу, ї́здиш
Past: ї́здив
Imper.: ї́здь

To come (on foot):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: прихо́дити — Pfve.: прийти́
Pres.: прихо́джу, прихо́диш — Fut.: прийду́, при́йдеш
Past: прихо́див — прийшо́в, прийшла́, прийшло́
Imper.: прихо́дь — прийди́

To come (be conveyed):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: приїзди́ти, приїжджа́ти — Pfve.: приї́хати
Pres.: приїжджу́, приїзди́ш, приїжджа́ю, приїжджа́єш — Fut.: приї́ду, приї́деш
Past: приїзди́в, приїжджа́в — приї́хав
Imper.: приїзди́, приїжджа́й — приїдь

Similarly: to go away (on foot): = відхо́дити, відійти́, Fut. відійду́, відійдеш
to go away (conveyed): = { від'їзди́ти, Pfve.: від'ї́хати; від'їжджа́ти }
to go out (on foot) = вихо́дити, ви́йти
Past: ви́йшов
to go out (conveyed) = { виїзди́ти, виїжджа́ти; Pfve. ви́їхати }

On the same scheme:

To carry:

Impfve.: нести́ — Pfve.: понести́
Pres.: несу́, несе́ш — Fut.: понесу́, понесе́ш
Past: ніс, несла́ — поніс, понесла́
Imper.: неси́ — понеси́

Freq.: носи́ти
Pres. ношу́, но́сиш
Past: носи́в
Imper.: носи́

To bring:

Impfve. *and* Freq.: принбсити
Pres.: принбшу, принбсиш
Imper.: принбсь

Pfve.: принестй
Fut.: принесу́, принесе́ш

To lead:

Impfve.: вестй
Pres. веду́, веде́ш
Past: вів, вела́
Imper.: ведй

Pfve.: повестй
Fut.: поведу́, поведе́ш
повíв, повела́
поведй

Freq.: водйти
Pres. водж́у, вбдиш
Past: водйв
Imper.: водй

To bring (a person):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: привбдити
Pres. привбджу, привбдиш
Imper. привбдь

Pfve.: привестй
Fut. приведу́, приведе́ш

To convey:

Impfve.: везтй
Pres.: везу́, везе́ш
Past: віз, везла́
Imper.: везй

Pfve.: повезтй
Fut. повезу́, повезе́ш
повíз, повезла́
повезй

Freq.: возйти
Pres. вожу́, вбзиш
Past: возйв
Imper.: возй

To bring (in a vehicle):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: привбзити
Pres.: привбжу, привбзиш
Imper.: привбзь

Pfve. привезтй
Fut.: привезу́, привезе́ш

TEXTS

I.
Євангелія від св. Луки, VIII.

5. Ось вийшов сіяч, щоб посіяти зерно своє. І як сіяв, упало одне край дороги,—і було повитоптуване, а птахи небесні його повидзьобували.

6. Друге ж упало на грунт кам'янистий,—і зійшовши, усохло, не мало бо вогкості.

7. А інше упало між терен,—і вигнався терен, і його поглушив.

8. Інше ж упало на добрую землю,—і, зійшовши, уродило стократно. Це сказавши, закликав: "Хто має вуха, щоб слухати,—нехай слухає!"

II.
Т. Шевченко.

І небо невмите, і заспані хвилі,
І понад берегом геть-геть,
Неначе п'яний, очерет
Без вітру гнеться. Боже милий!
Чи довго буде ще мені
В оцій незамкнутій тюрмі,
Понад оцим нікчемним морем
Нудити світом? Не говорить,
Мовчить і гнеться, мов жива,
В степу пожовклая трава;
Не хоче правдоньки сказать,
А більше ні в кого спитать.

III.
Т. Шевченко.

Пророк

Неначе праведних дітей,
Господь, любя отих людей,
Послав на землю їм пророка,—
Свою любов благовістить!
Святую правду возвістить!
Неначе наш Дніпро широкий,
Слова його лились, текли
І в серце падали глибоко!
Огнем невидимим пекли
Замерзлі душі. Полюбили
Того пророка, скрізь ходили
За ним і сльози, знай, лили
Навчені люди. І лукаві!
Господнюю святую славу

Розтлили... І чужим богам
Пожерли жертву! Омерзились!
І мужа свята.. Горе вам!
На стогнах каменем побили.
І праведно господь великий,
Мов на звірей тих лютих, диких,
Кайдани повелів кувать,
Глибокі тюрми покопать.
І, роде лютий і жестокий!
Вомісто кроткого пророка...
Царя вам повелів надать!

IV.
Т. Шевченко.

Утоптала стежечку
Через яр,
Через гору, серденько,
На базар.
Продавала бублики
Козакам,
Вторгувала, серденько,
П'ятака.
Я два шаги, два шаги
Пропила,
За копійку дудника
Найняла.
Заграй мені, дуднику,
На дуду,
Нехай своє лишенько
Забуду.
Отака я дівчина,
Така я!
Сватай мене, серденько,
Вийду я.

V.
Л. Глібов.

Орачі й муха.

У полі орачі на яринý орали,
І муха там булá.
І хоч її непрохану ганяли,
Одначе крадькомá і їла, і пилá.
Бо звикла змáлечку кохатись у чужому.
Над вечір орачі верталися додому,
І муха там на розі у вола.
Зустрівсь комар на лузі край села
Та й каже, сміючись: "Добрúвечір,
сестричко!
А ти вже тут чого, моя перепелúчко?

Кума, чи рóдичка кому?"
А та йому:
"Бов, бов! Радéнький, що дурненький!
Хоч довгий ніс, та розум коротенький.
Бо комарі не сіють і не жнуть.
Ти роздивись: у полі ми орали,
Раненько почалú, ввесь день не спочивали.
Тепер додóму час, з вечерею нас ждуть."

VI.
М. Вовчок.

Однієї весни вийшли ми рано з дому, пристали в Кумицях, як і звичайно, на третій день увечері. Тепло було і вишні цвіли рясно. Не доїхавши до тітчиної хати, Гриць спинив воли, та й каже:

—Дивись, Івасю, не одходь братіку; я зараз вернусь.

—А куди се, Грицю?

—Да треба до знакомого чоловіка забігти. Возів не лишай! —та й пішов; а я за ним назирком; до яких се знакомих людей він ходить?

Перейшли улицю, підкрались під нову хату. Гриць свиснув; переждав трохи, свиснув удруге... утретє... Все нічого не чути. А мене аж під п'яти пече,— що се буде? Обійшов Гриць садок. Якраз під старою вишнею, що, здається, найряснійше цвіла, стояла дівчина— хороша, як зоря ясна, руса коса нижче пояса; стояла вона проти місяця молодика, і, піднявши білу руку, промовляла:

"Молодик,
Як гвоздик!
Тобі роги красні,
Мені очі ясні!"

Як почала приказувати так удруге, Гриць тихесенько свиснув. Дівчина стрепенулась, як сива зозулька; прислухається... Грицько ближче,—"Грицю! —каже,—се ти, Грицю?"

Я собі послухати посунувсь, та, як був дурний, так і шурхнув у яму,—увесь вид кропивою пожалив. Якийсь вражий син під самісіньким тином яму викопав. Годі вже тоді слухати—вискочив та до возів! Мабуть Гриць подумав, чи не зайця сполохнув.

Перестояли ми три дні в Кумицях. Грицько підждав знов знакомих людей,—не прийшли вражі сини! А сам, тим часом, щовечора ходив, а світом вертав. Я, водившись з хлопцями, допитавсь, чия се нова хата: Данила Мороза. Козак був усатий, здоровий, а ще до того й дуже сердитий; мав дочку Марину.

VII.
М. Рильский.

Море і солов'ї.

В зеленій бухті сонце і дрімота.
Ген-ген уже димиться пароплав,
За ним замкнулись водяні ворота
І ржавий ключ на дно спокійно впав.

Округлі груди піднімає море
И опускає з віддихом тяжким,
І світ такий прозорий і просторий,
Як для дитини материнський дім.

В димах узгір'я виринає й тоне,
І тінь од нього розпростерлась ниць,
І падають сніги рожевих птиць
На море запахуще і солоне.

VIII.
П. Тичина.

В космічному оркестрі.

Благословенні:
матерія і просторінь, число і міра!
Благословенні кольори, і тембри, і огонь,
огонь, тональність всього світу,
    огонь і рух, огонь і рух!

Дух, що пройняв єси все,
    хто ти єсть?

Чи звать тебе спокоєм? вітром?
сліпою силою машин?
Чи слухом атомів, ігрою порошин?
Ти перед всім світом руки звів немов перед
        пюпітром,
    тло—
    пропелерами загуло,
    хаос у танці завертіло
    і десь тромбонами в бездонних коридорах
        оддало...

Тьми-тем тіл, часток неспаяних самотно
        забриніло;
    скоріш, скоріш
    одне з одним,
    орбітно-плавко упадім,
        скоріш!

Мільйони сонцевих систем
вібрують, рвуть і гоготять!
Комети ржуть і баско мчаться,
і океани над океанами шумлять.
Тьми-тем тіл, часток неспаяних
спіралять вниз, убік у стелі...
    Огні! огні!
І плачуть, і співають промені у далині,
    немов віолончелі.

Дух, що пройняв єси все,
    хто ти єсть?

SECTION 3. BYELORUSSIAN[1] (WHITE RUSSIAN)

INTRODUCTION

The Byelorussians live in the Western part of the U.S.S.R. Their country is wooded and plentifully watered, but in many places it has poor sandy soil or vast marshes. Its eastern boundary lies some 400 miles west of Moscow, and is roughly bounded by the Upper Volga in the north-east and by the rivers Desna in the south-east, Pripet in the south, Narew in the west, and stretches as far as the upper reaches of the river Velikaya in the north (beyond the Dvina). This area now approximately coincides with the boundaries of the Byelorussian S.S.R. Before 1939 the Byelorussian people had never been united in a single republic of their own. Their native land had never been rich enough economically or powerful enough politically to ensure their independence, and they became the subjects of different powerful neighbours in turn. They had few big towns, being mostly a peasant people, cultivating crops such as corn or flax, or engaged in forestry and fishing. Life was hard, and their folksongs often reflect a melancholy and gloomy mood. In the south of their country lies the vast area of the Pripet (Prýpiat') Marshes, in which the town of Pinsk is situated. Gómel is on the north-eastern edge of this area. Minsk, the capital of the republic, is well to the north-west, somewhat west of the centre of the republic. East of Minsk are the big towns of Mohilëv and Vitebsk. The whole of the republic suffered very heavily during the recent war (1939-1945).

The language of the Byelorussians is closely akin to Ukrainian and, to a slightly less extent, to Great Russian. In its vocabulary it has many borrowings also from Polish. Phonetically it is certainly closest to Ukrainian, but with the important difference that, unlike the latter, it is characterized by "akanie" (the pronunciation of all unstressed *o*'s as *a*), which makes it akin to the southern Great Russian dialects. Modern literary Byelorussian is founded on the dialects of south-west Byelorussia, which are characterized by strong "akanie". This feature has caused the famous Russian scholar, Shákhmatov, to surmise that the Byelorussians are the descendants of eastern Slavs who originally lived much further east in Central Russia and took refuge in the forests and

[1] Pronounced: B-yellow-Russian.

marshes of Byelorussia under the pressure of invaders from Asia. Another feature, the so-called "dzekanie", "cekanie" (the pronunciation of palatalized *d* and *t* as soft affricates—phonetic ʤ, ʧ) seemed to Shákhmatov to indicate a certain intermingling with Lechitic (old Polish) tribes, while he considers that the many features of Byelorussian shared with Ukrainian show the close kinship of these two languages.

The Byelorussians first appear in history as partners in the Principality of Lithuania, whose prince Gedymin occupied Eastern Byelorussia in 1315. Soon after Western Byelorussia and Western Ukraine were also taken over by Lithuania, whose princes then styled themselves "Dux magnus Lithuaniae et Russiae". The Lithuanians were both less numerous and less civilized than their Slav subjects, and hence it was that they took over a form of Byelorussian mixed with Ukrainian as their own official language of administration and also of literature. This language was a fusion of the Byelorussian and Ukrainian of that period, which in its written form was dominated by the orthography and traditions of Church Slavonic. Many works of early Russian literature are claimed alike by Russians, Ukrainians, and Byelorussians as ancient examples of their languages. In truth they are the common heritage of all the three East Slav languages, which in those days had not come to be clearly differentiated.

The influence of Ukrainian was also strong later, in the seventeenth century, after the Union of Lithuania with Poland in 1569 (the Unia Lubelska), by which large areas of Byelorussia and Western Ukraine also came under Poland. This was due to the influence of the Orthodox Church which extended a common organization over Ukraine and Byelorussia, and in which a Ukrainian pronunciation of Church Slavonic predominated (in these lands) right into the twentieth century.

One of the earliest landmarks of Byelorussian literature is F. Skarýna's translation of the Bible, printed in Prague in 1517-1519. Important too are the *Lithuanian Chronicles* and the *Lithuanian Statute* and the verses of Andrew Rýmša, all dating from the sixteenth century, as well as numerous church writings. After the establishment of the Uniat (Greek Catholic) Church at the close of the sixteenth century, the Byelorussian literary language began to be strongly polonized under the influence of the Polish Jesuit writers. This can be seen in the numerous "intermedia" and "school dramas" of that period which have been preserved to this day in manuscripts written in the Latin alphabet.

Modern Byelorussian literature dates from Vikéntij Róvinskij's travesty of the Aeneid, written at the beginning of the nineteenth century, in imitation of the Ukrainian, Kotl'arévśkyj's "Енеїда" which had appeared in 1798. At the same time there appeared the anonymous comic epos *Taras on Parnassus*. The didactic poet, Jan Chachót, and the novelist and dramatist V. Dúnin-Martsinkiévich are also important figures in the national awakening.

One of the first scholars to devote himself to a serious investigation of Byelorussian was the Czech, Josef Pervolf, whose big work on the Slavs in Russian, "Славяне, ихъ взаимныя отношенія и связи" appeared in Warsaw in 1886-1893. The most thorough study of the language and its background was made by E. F. Kárskij in his monumental "Бѣлоруссы" vol. i-ii (Warsaw, 1908-1911). (His first works appeared some thirty years earlier.) The first dictionary of Byelorussian by I. Nosóvich appeared as early as 1870 in St. Petersburg.

In 1891, Maciej Burachók (F. Bahushévich) published in Cracow his *Dúdka bielarúskaja* (in Latin script), an important work in the nationalist spirit.

After the revolution of 1905 the nationalist movement grew apace also within the frontiers of the Russian Empire. From 1906 the periodical "Násha Níva" started appearing in Vilna with the collaboration of the best Byelorussian writers of the time. At the same time the first Byelorussian publishing house was established in St. Petersburg. Its full title was "Zahl'ánie sónca i ŭ náša vakónca" (= the sun will look in at our little window too). From the group round "Násha Níva" arose the greatest Byelorussian writers of our day, the poets Jánka Kupála (Iván Lutsévich), Jákub Kólas (K. Mitskiévich), the first Byelorussian novelist, Tsíshka Hartný (D. Žilunóvich) and the literary critic Antón Navína (A. Lutskíevich), and many others.

It is also notable that this group worked out a uniform system of spelling for Byelorussian, which was accepted by all the Byelorussian press of the time. When using the Cyrillic script they decided to drop the letters ъ, ѣ, and и; for this last (phon. i) they used only і. They also decided to write their (hard) щ (щ) as шч. When using the Latin alphabet they adopted ž for former ż, š for sz, and č for cz, as well as v for the old w. These reforms were followed by B. Tarashkiévich in the first reliable grammar of Byelorussian, which he first brought out in Vilna in 1918. (The fifth revised edition was published there in 1929.)

Between the two world wars there were various disputes about the orthography of Byelorussian, both within the U.S.S.R. and outside. Dr. Jan Stankiévich of Vilna (Wilno) University was the most prominent writer on Byelorussian outside the U.S.S.R. At a conference on the language in Minsk in 1926, agreement could not be achieved. It was not till the Decree of 28th August, 1933, promulgating the adoption of the proposals of the Byelorussian Academy of Sciences in Minsk, that the modern orthography was established. The following rules were made, settling debated points:—

1. я (or а) to be written for е only in the pretonic syllable.
2. не (= not), без (= without), when written as separate words, always to retain this spelling.
3. In groups of consonants before palatalized vowels, no ь is necessary (to indicate that the first element is soft too): hence снег (with soft с), not сьнег (= snow). (This rule is not observed by some of the émigré press.)
4. ь to be left out in double consonants: галлё, not гальлё (= branches), жыццё, not жыцьцё (= life).
5. Double soft дз to be written ддз (not дзьдз): суддзя́ (= judge).
6. Modern loan words not to be subject to "akanie": соцыалістычны (= socialist, adj.; now сацыялістычны).
7. The sound е after consonants to be written as е except after т and д: тэа́тр, дэлега́т (= theatre, delegate).
8. Foreign geographical names to be spelt so as to preserve their pronunciation as in their language of origin.

By these decisions the mainly "phonetic" character of the spelling of vowels was retained, while the reformed spelling of the soft consonant groups brought Byelorussian nearer to Russian, the spelling of which follows the very natural law that if the last element of a group of consonants is palatalized, the preceding ones will also, if possible, be pronounced palatalized by assimilation. This makes Byelorussian easier to read for Russians and Ukrainians, while the distinctive character of Byelorussian is still preserved.

With the founding of the Byelorussian S.S.R. after the Revolution and the establishment of the Byelorussian Academy of Sciences and the University at Minsk the Byelorussian people and their language entered upon a new phase of their existence, which offered them opportunities of development such as they had never known before; and their achievements should not be overlooked.

THE BYELORUSSIAN ALPHABETS

We give below parallel with the usual Cyrillic letters their equivalents in the Latin alphabet. This system is based mainly on Polish spelling, but now uses *č*, *š*, *ž*, *v* for *cz*, *sz*, *ż*, *w* respectively—a reform made shortly before the first world war.

Cyrillic.	*Latin script.*	*Approx. English equivalent.*
А а	A a	(more open and forward than) *ah*
Б б	B b	*b*
В в	V v	*v*
Г г	H h	*phon. ɣ (voiced *ch*)
(Г' г')	G g	**g* in "go"
Д д	D d	*d*
Е е	Je ie	†*ye* in "yet"
Ё ё	Jo io	†*yo* in "yonder"
Ж ж	Ž ž	(hard) *zh*, *s* in "pleasure"
З з	Z z	*z*
І і	I i	*ee* in "meet"
й	j	*y* in "boy"
К к	K k	*k*
Л л	Ł ł and L l	§*l* in "table" / *l* in "leaf"
М м	M m	*m*
Н н	N n	*n*
О о	O o	*o* in "for"

*In ordinary Byelorussian print the Г pronounced g and occurring mostly in foreign words is not distinguished from the ordinary Г, pronounced voiced *ch* (ɣ). Г' is used in some grammars.

†The "jotated" vowels е, ё, ю, я are transcribed in the Latin script respectively: ie, io, iu, ia after consonants and je, jo, ju, ja initially and after vowels.

After the soft L, l only e, o, u, a are written.

П п	P p	*p*
Р р	R r	*r* rolled
С с	S s	*s* in "see"
Т т	T t	*t*
У у	U u	*oo* in "boot"
Ў ў	Ŭ ŭ	*w*
Ф ф	F f	*f*
Х х	Ch ch	*ch* in "loch"
Ц ц	C c	*ts* pronounced together as in "bits"
Ч ч	Č č	*ch* in "church" (hard)
Ш ш	Š š	*sh* (hard)
ы	y	*i* in "bit" with the tip of the tongue further back
ь	´ over consonants	sign of palatalization or softness
Э э	E e	*e* in "bet"
Ю ю	Ju iu	†*u* in "tune", "you"
Я я	Ja ia	†"yah"
' (apostrophe)	j	∇*y* in "yet"

The digraphs дз and дж are used to indicate the single sounds ʤ and ʤ (English *dz* in "adze" and *j* in "jet"), as in дзын (= ting!—imitation of a bell) and дзень (= day—with *soft dz*), and гляджу́ (= I look), саджу́ (= I set). (These digraphs are not treated as separate letters, distinct from д, in dictionaries, but they cannot be separated in carrying over a word on to the next line.)

†See footnote † on previous page.

§In the Latin script Ł, ł indicates a "hard" or "dark" *l*, such as occurs in English "table", while L, l indicates a "soft" *l*, such as in "leaf" or "million".

∇The apostrophe is used in the Cyrillic spelling for the "yot" or "y" sound (like *y* in "yet") to separate a hard consonant from the following (soft) vowel, e.g.:—

з'езд, in Latin script zjezd, pron. zjɛst, = congress; надво́р'е = yard; куп'ё = hillocks; бязры́б'е = lack of fish; Хаці́м'я girl's name.

In the Latin script ć is used for (soft) ць
ń " " " нь
ś " " " сь
ź " " " зь

when they occur finally or before another (soft) consonant—soft in pronunciation, though not explicitly in spelling in Cyrillic, e.g.:—

шэсць (= six), in Latin script: šeść.

but before vowels other than i, *ci-*, *ni-*, *si-*, *zi-* are used instead, e.g.:—

серп (= sickle), in Latin script: sierp.

and before i unaccented consonants are used, e.g.:—

сіні (= blue), in Latin script: sini, phon. 'ʂiɲi.

i after a consonant is used to indicate other soft consonants which never occur finally, e.g.:—

мята (= mint), in Latin script: miata.

The only peculiarly Byelorussian letter in the Cyrillic script is ў, pronounced like English *w* or phon. ṷ and occurring after vowels, as in:—

воўк (= wolf), pron. voṷk. (See below "Pronunciation").

Old Slavonic letters not used in Byelorussian are:—

ѕ, ѣ, ѹ, ѡ, ѣ, ѩ, ѥ, ѧ, ѫ, ѭ, ѯ, ξ, ψ, θ, υ.

Russian letters not used in Byelorussian:—

и, щ, ъ, the corresponding sounds being rendered in Byelorussian by і, шч, and ' (apostrophe).

Ukrainian letters not used in Byelorussian are:—

є, и, ї, щ.

Serbian letters not used in Byelorussian are:—

ђ, ј, љ, њ, ћ, ц.

Macedonian letters not used in Byelorussian are:

ѓ, ќ, ѕ.

PRONUNCIATION

The pronunciation of Byelorussian is more clearly indicated in the spelling of the vowels, which is roughly "phonetic", than in the accepted spelling of the consonants, which follows "historical" principles, as in most other Slav languages, and does not show voicing and unvoicing or palatalization in all cases, e.g. in consonantal groups.

The *Accent*, not indicated in print, is a strong stress accent and can occur on any syllable of a word and may also shift to other syllables in the course of flexion, e.g.:—

сялó = village, Nom. plur. сёлы
пóле = field, " палí
галавá = head, " галóвы
зямля́ = land, earth, " зéмлі
косць = bone, Gen. sing. касцí, Nom. plur. кóсці, Gen. plur. касцéй
нясý = I carry, несяцé = you (pl.) carry
гаварý = I speak, гавóрыш = you (sg.) speak

In position it agrees more often with the accent of Ukrainian than of Russian where these two languages differ, e.g.:—

стары́ (= old), cf. Ukr. старий, Russ. стáрый.
гавóрыць (= he speaks), cf. Ukr. говóрить, Russ. говорúт.

The *Consonants* in Byelorussian are of the usual Slav and continental type with unaspirated plosives and the usual pairs of voiced and unvoiced.

As in Russian and Ukrainian, palatalized ("soft") as well as unpalatalized ("hard") variants exist for all of them, except the *chuintantes* ж, ч, ш and дж and also р, which are never soft in Byelorussian, e.g.:—

рака́ (= river), cf. Russ. рекá, pron. ɾɪ'ka.

For this reason ж, ч, ш and дж, as well as р, can only be followed by the ordinary, non-yotated vowels: а, э, ы, о, у; hence the spellings:—

жóўты = yellow
чэсць = honour
шыць = to sew
дажджы́ = the rains;

while—

б is hard in быць = to be, but soft in біць = to beat

н is hard in на = on; take it! but soft in няня = nurse
с is hard in суды = pair of buckets, but soft in сюды = hither, here
х is hard in хата = house, cottage, but soft in хітры = cunning, etc.

It should also be noted that the soft versions of т and д in Byelorussian are the *soft* (sibilant) *affricates* ц and дз (phon. ʦ, ʤ), typical of the language, which regularly occur before yotated vowels, e.g.:—

ціха (= quiet!). cf. Russ. тихо
дзень (= day), cf. Russ. день

This is called "cekanie-dzekanie" and does *not* apply to foreign words, hence the spellings:—

дыпламат = diplomat
тэатр = theatre

ц and дз can also be hard, as in—

цэп = flail (pron. ʦɛp)
дзын = ting!

Г, г is pronounced in nearly all native Byelorussian words as a voiced velar fricative ɣ (the voiced counterpart of Cyrillic х), e.g.:—

гара = hill, pron. ɣa'ra

It is only pronounced as *g* (as in English "go") in recent foreign loan-words and in native words after з, e.g.:—

ганак = porch (Polish ganek)
мазгі = brains

Л, л is pronounced hard (as in Russian, Ukrainian, Macedonian, and Bulgarian), phon. ł, before а, (э), ы, о, у (in Latin script written ła, łe, ły, ło, łu) and is pronounced soft (as in Russian and Ukrainian), phon. ɫ, before я, е, і, ё, ю (in Latin script written la, le, li, lo, lu), e.g.:—

лапа = łapa (= paw)
луг = ług (= meadow)
лямпа = lampa (= lamp)
лёд = lod (= ice)

Only foreign words long accepted in the language are spelt with soft л, e.g.:—

пляц = area, place
лямпа = lamp

But: Лондан = London філасофія = philosophy
лаяльны = loyal лабірынт = labyrinth

Ф, ф occurs in foreign words. In the dialects it is replaced by хв, х and п, e.g.:—

фарба = paint, dial. хварба
фунт = pound, dial. хунт
форма = form
афіцэр = officer

but—

Пілып = Philip

In groups of consonants if з, с, ц or дз precede a soft consonant except г, к or х, they also become soft in pronunciation by assimilation, as in Russian, e.g.: in чэсць (= honour) с is soft as well as ц. (Until 1933 this used to be indicated in the spelling: чэсьць.) But in згінуць (= to perish), скінуць (= to throw off) з and с remain hard.

Voiced consonants become unvoiced finally and in consonantal groups before other unvoiced consonants, e.g.:—

лёд = ice, pron. лёт
боб = bean, " боп
дождж = rain, " дошч
ножка = little foot, " ношка
рэдка = rarely, " рэтка

This also applies to the pronunciation of the prepositions and prefixes ending in д and the prepositions (only) ending in з, e.g.:—

ад хаты = from the house, pron. ат хаты
прадстаўнік = representative, " пратстаўнік
без хлеба = without bread, " бес хлеба

But *prefixes* ending in з (з-, без-, цераз-, уз-, раз-) are actually written (and pronounced) with с before unvoiced consonants, e.g.:—

згінуць = to perish, but скінуць = to throw off
разбіць = to smash, but расшырыць = to widen

Unvoiced consonants become voiced in consonantal groups before other voiced consonants, e.g.:—

касьба = scything, pron. казьба
малацьба = threshing, " маладзьба
пяцьдзесят = fifty, " пяд(зь)дзесят

Certain *groups of consonants* undergo assimilation, though the spelling does not show this. Thus:—

тц, чц both sound like цц, e.g.:—

мáтцы = to the mother
дачцэ́ = to the daughter

and тч, дч both sound like чч, e.g.:—

старасвéтчына = the old world, olden things
загáдчык = manager

Further:—

дс is written but sounds like ц, e.g.:—

лю́дскі = human

but ц is written for т+с, e.g.:—

брáцкі = fraternal

с is written for ж+с, but з+с remains, e.g.:—

бóскі = divine
францýзскі = French

т disappears in the spelling as well as in the pronunciation of original -стн-, -стл-, e.g.:—

шчáсны, шчаслíвы = happy

д disappears in the spelling as well as in the pronunciation of original -здн-, e.g.:—

пóзні = late

дц and цьс(я) give цц (in spelling as well as in pronunciation), e.g.:—

двáццаць = twenty
мы́цца = to wash
мы́ецца = he is washing (intrans.)

Other *double consonants* (except labials and р) can also occur in Byelorussian, e.g.:—

ралля́ = ploughed field
пытáнне = question
валóссе = hair (collective)
рыззё = rags
суддзя́ = judge
жыццё = life
збóжжа = corn
сýччa = branches
зацíшша = quiet spot, lull
аддáць = to give away
ссы́паць = to pour off

бяззýбы = toothless
ваéнны = military, martial

The Vowels. It will already have been observed from the above ("The Alphabet", the explanation of the pronunciation of л, etc.) that the pronunciation of vowels and consonants in Byelorussian is interdependent, as in Russian and Ukrainian.

The "ordinary" unyotated vowels in Byelorussian are:—

а, э, ы, о, у

to which correspond the yotated vowels:—

я, е, і, ё, ю

which are pronounced with a full "yot" or *y*-sound initially in words and syllables. Medially they have no "yot" and the preceding consonants are palatalized or pronounced soft before them. (See the examples given under "The Consonants"—second paragraph.)

In native Byelorussian words Ё, ё occurs only under stress, as in Russian.

Diphthongs. Besides the above full vowels, Byelorussian, like Ukrainian, Polish, Slovak, Lusatian, and Slovenian, has two short or glide vowels which occur after any of the other vowels:—

й (phon. j̯)
ў (phon. u̯ or w)

e.g.:—

дай! = give!
нагрэ́й! = warm!
выймáць = to take out (Imperfective)
сóйка = jay
дуй! = blow!
даў = he gave
нагрэ́ў = he warmed
крыў = he covered
кроў = blood
дуў = he blew

дóляй = with (his) fate (Instr. sing.)
жалéйка = pipe, whistle
кій = stick
зямлёй = with earth
малю́й! = paint!
звы́чаяў = of customs
леў = lion
будзíў = he wakened
вераб'ёў = of sparrows

Notice also the spellings like: здарóўе (= health), where a further vowel follows the glide vowel ў.

у by itself or initially in a word before a consonant becomes shortened to (and is spelt) ў only after a preceding word ending in a full vowel, cf. Ukrainian, e.g.:—

Пу́сты ўлє́тку на́шы сёлы = Our villages are empty in the summer
Бы́лі ў ба́цькі тры сыны́ = A father had three sons

Likewise, і (= and) by itself (if not emphasized, of course) or initially in a word before a consonant may in pronunciation be reduced to й after a preceding word ending in a full vowel, but it is never spelt so now, e.g.:—

Прышло́ і (= й) лє́та = summer came too
Яна́ ідзє́ (= йдзє́) = she is going

but—

Ён ідзє́ (= ідзє́) = he is going

A very important feature of the Byelorussian vowel system is the *akanie* (the pronunciation of unstressed о as а) as in Russian. But in contrast to Russian, this feature is also shown in the *spelling*. Furthermore in the literary language this *а* represents in all positions a true *а* vowel and not the neutral vowel ə, hence—

галава́ (= head), is pronounced phon. ɣała'va.

From this it can be inferred that the vowel о, whenever written in ordinary words, is always stressed; a few exceptions can be found in compound and foreign words, where о bears secondary stress, e.g.:—

восемсо́т = eight hundred
штодзє́нны = daily
мо̀вазна́ўства = linguistics
оммє́тр = ohmmeter
о̀тасклєро́з = otosclerosis

Similarly ё only occurs under stress, alternating with я and е, cf.:—

ён = he
яна́ = she
нясём = we carry
несяцє́ = you (plur.) carry
канём = with a horse
ло́кцем = with an elbow

It should also be noted that э occurs unstressed only in foreign and compound words, e.g.:—

тэа́тр = theatre
шэсцьсо́т = six hundred

Furthermore unstressed е in the pretonic syllable becomes я (а after р and the *chuintantes*), a characteristically Byelorussian feature called *"jakanie"*, and is so spelt, e.g.:—

лес	= a wood,	Nom. plur.	лясы́
бярёза	= birch,	cf. Russ.	берёза
зялёны	= green,	" "	зелёный
рака́	= river,	" "	река́
чаму́?	= why?,	" "	чему́

This also applies to не (= not) and без (= without), but only when used as prefixes, e.g.:—

нядо́ля = bad luck
бяззу́бы = toothless

but in *pre*pretonic syllables—

нєвялі́кі = not big

Owing to these regular *alternations* of pronunciation, reflected in the spelling, we thus have the regular alternations of vowels:—

stressed о with unstressed а
" э " " ы in nouns after ц from к, but with unstressed а after р and the *chuintantes*.
" е " " я (in pretonic position)
" ё " " я and е.

As nouns, adjectives and verbs can be both finally stressed and non-finally, this necessitates regularly parallel paradigms in all the declensions and conjugations, apparently doubling the work of the learner. He will, however, observe that the alternations are quite regular and automatic. Thus:—

сталём (Instr. sing.) = with a table
but—
бра́там (Instr. sing.) = with a brother

руцэ́ (Dat. sing.) = to the hand
but—
го́рцы (Dat. sing.) = to the hillock

бярэ́ (3rd pers. sing. Pres.) = he takes
but—
плє́шча (3rd pers. sing. Pres.) = he splashes

канём (Instr. sing.) = with a horse
but—
ло́кцем (Instr. sing.) = with an elbow

нясе́ = he carries
нясём = we carry
but—
несяце́ = you (plur.) carry

вераб'ёў (Gen. plur.) = of sparrows
but—
звы́чаяў (Gen. plur.) = of customs

But where а and я are the original vowels of a root they are, of course, retained in all unstressed positions, e.g.:—

святкава́ць = to celebrate
страхава́нне = insurance

The only other vowels which suffer any noticeable *modification* when not stressed are э and е, which tend to approach ы and і respectively, so that—

тэлегра́ма sounds like тылігра́ма in the pronunciation of some people, and—

а́рышт (= arrest) is actually so spelt.

But such spellings are exceptional in the literary language.

The vowel ы never occurs initially (this agrees with Russian and Ukrainian).

The vowels э, о, у never occur initially under stress in native Byelorussian words.

о and у have the prothetic consonant в prefixed. Hence:—

во́ка = eye
во́стры = sharp
ву́ха = ear
ву́ліца = street
ву́гал = angle

and even medially—

наву́ка = learning

э has the breathing consonant г, e.g.:—

гэ́ты = this
гэ́тулькі - so much, so many

в can also be used to separate an initial unstressed а after the preposition у preceded by a word ending in a consonant, e.g.:—

аго́нь = fire
but
дом у вагні́ = the house is on fire

The vowel і initially sounds like ы when preceded by a word ending in a hard consonant, but this is not shown in spelling (as in Russian), e.g.:—

ён ішо́ў (= he was going) sounds like
ён ышо́ў.

When, however, a root beginning with і has a prefix ending in a hard consonant, then ы is also *written* instead of і, e.g.:—

адышо́ў = he went away
зысці́ = to go down
падыду́ = I shall go up to
(cf. Russian сыска́ть = to discover)

THE BYELORUSSIAN DIALECTS

The Byelorussian dialects are divided into two groups, the North-Eastern which form a transition to Great Russian, and the South-Western which are nearer to Ukrainian in its Northern dialects.

The South-Western dialects are characterized by a "non-dissimilative *akanie*", in which an а or о in the pretonic syllable is pronounced nearly like the neutral vowel ə (or nearly ы in eastern districts) *only* before a stressed syllable containing а; but before stressed syllables containing any other vowel an а or о is pronounced а. Hence:—

вэда́ = water
but
вады́ (Gen. sing.)
вадзе́ (Dat. sing.)

On the other hand the *jakanie*, i.e. pronouncing of pretonic е and я as a distinct я, is general and clearly audible in these dialects. They are also characterized by:—

(a) The appearance of certain diphthongs only in stressed syllables.

(b) Nom. plurals in -е (э) or -іэ (-ыэ), e.g.:—

рубле́ = roubles, or рубліэ́
сталэ́ = tables, or сталыэ́

(c) Survival of the old Dual in feminine and neuter nouns after дзве (= two), e.e.:—

дзве руце́ = two hands
дзве сяле́ = two villages

(d) 1st pers. plural of the Present and Imperative of verbs, in -мо as well as in -м, e.g.:—

ідемо = we are going
даймо = let us give

(e) 1st and 2nd pers, plural Imperative in -ем, -еця or -іэм, -іэця, e.g.:—

нясе́м, нясе́ця or нясі́эм, нясі́эця.

(f) Imperfective Future in -му, -меш, etc., side by side with that formed with буду + Infinitive, e.g.:—

рабі́цьму = I shall work

These features appear in Ukrainian dialects, but not in the North-Eastern Byelorussian dialects.

Furthermore, in South-Western dialects no final -ць appears in the 3rd pers. sing. Present of verbs of the *e*-class or of non-finally stressed verbs of the *i*-class (in contrast to the North-Eastern dialects). Also the final -це of the 2nd pers. plural Present is pronounced -це when stressed and not -цё, as in the North-Eastern dialects. Likewise есць (= is) is pronounced with an e and not with a ё, as in the North-Eastern dialects. Also in some areas the 1st pers. plural Present ends in -ом preceded by the same hard consonant with which the original root ends, e.g.:—

ідо́м = we go
пяко́м = we bake
нясо́м = we carry

while in the North-Eastern dialects we have—

ідзём
пячом
нясём

Lastly, double consonants are reduced to single ones in some South-Western dialects.

The North-Eastern dialects really form a transition to the southern Great Russian dialects and are characterized by:—

1. The absence of "dzekanie".
2. The pronunciation of г as ɣ and not as ɦ.
3. The use of soft р (ṛ), confused in some dialects, e.g.:—

   гразь = dirt
   грані́ца = frontier
4. A soft pronunciation of ч.
5. Long ж and ш where literary Byelorussian has ждж and шч, e.g.:—

   е́жжу = I go (in a vehicle)
   пушшу́ = I shall allow

6. л instead of ў, e.g.:—

   волк = wolf
   зайшо́л = he dropped in

7. Soft dentals can be followed by *j*, written ь, e.g.:—

   свінья́ = pig
   пла́тья = dress

8. Loss of 2nd Palatalization in the declension of feminine nouns, e.g.:—

   наге́ = to the foot
   руке́ = to the hand
   сахе́ = to the plough

9. Nom. sing. masc. of adjectives in -ой, e.g.:—

   злой = evil
   худо́й = poor

10. Gen. sing. masc. and neut. of adjectives pronounced with в, e.g.:—

    зло́ва

11. Nom. plur. of masculine nouns may end in -а, e.g.:—

    города́ = towns

All these features are shared by literary Great Russian except point No. 2.

VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING

These features are well preserved in Byelorussian, and the phonetic spelling of the vowels presents to the eye an even more varied picture than in Russian and Ukrainian.

Examples of vowel gradation:

нясці́ = to carry (Impfve.)
нёс = was carrying (masc.)
несяце́ = you are carrying

насі́ць = to carry (Freq.)
но́шаны = carried (Past Part. Pass.)

дух = spirit

до́хнуць = to die (of animals)

сабра́ць = to collect (Pfve.)
збяру́цца = they will collect (intrans.)

збо́ры = preparations (for a journey)

цячы́ = to flow

це́ча = a leak

ток = current

Examples of vowel lengthening:

дóхнуць = to die (of animals) ды́хаць = to breathe

сабра́ць = to collect (Pfve.) сабіра́ць and збіра́ць = to collect (Impfve.)

In some cases the spelling disguises examples of lengthening, as in—

прывалакці́ = to drag to (Pfve.) (<-волокці)
прывала́кваць = to drag to (Impfve.) (<-волак-)

SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS

1. In common with Russian and Ukrainian, Byelorussian has "polnoglasie" for the original Common Slav syllables with vowel + liquid, which suffered metathesis in Old Slavonic and modern South and West Slav. Byelorussian changes unstressed o to a and unstressed pretonic e to я (a after p), hence the "unusual" spelling for those knowing Russian and Ukrainian. Thus:—

From original Common Slav:—		
*tolt	валакці́ = to drag	
	мóладзь = youth	
	гóлас = voice	
	балóта = a bog	
*tort	барана́ = harrow	
	варóты = gates	
	гóрад = town	
*telt	малакó = milk	
	малóць = to grind	(<*melti)
	жóлаб = trough	
*tert	чарада́ = row, file, crowd, flock	
	бéраг = beach	
	бярóза = birch	
	бярэ́ма (-мя) = armful	

Initially we have metathesis only, as in other Slavonic languages, e.g.:—

рабóта = work

2. The 1st Palatalization: к, г, х changing to ч, ж, ш respectively, e.g.:—

root pek-: печ = stove
root tek-: цячы́ = flows (Infin. цячы́)
бог = a god: бажаствó = deity, divinity
страх = terror: стра́шны = terrible

2*a*. ц also changes to ч, e.g.:—

cf. Russian овца́ (= sheep) and Byelorussian авéчка (= sheep).

3. The 2nd Palatalization is alive in literary Byelorussian and in the South-Western dialects: к, г, х change here to ц, з, с, e.g.:—

рука́ = hand	Dat., Loc. Sing.: руцэ́
парóг = threshold	Loc.: на парóзе = on the threshold
вýха = ear	Loc.: у вýсе = in the ear

Occasionally it is avoided, a Locative singular in -у being preferred, e.g.:—

пясóк = sand, Loc. sing.: пяскý

It never occurs in Nominatives plural in Byelorussian, e.g.:—

пяскí = sands
ваўкí = wolves

4. The influence of the *j* element on preceding consonants can be seen in:—

к, г, х changing to ч, ж, ш, e.g.:—

пла́каць = to weep, пла́чу (1st pers. sing. Pres.)
струга́ць = to plane, стружý (1st pers. sing. Pres.)
душа́ = soul, cf. дух = spirit

т, д (or their soft variants—ц, дз) changing to ч, ж (or дж in verbs mostly, as in Ukrainian), e.g.:—

свéціць = to shine, свéчу (1st pers. sing. Pres.)
мяжа́ = boundary (<C.S. medja)

but also:—

пасадзі́ць = to plant (Pfve.) пасаджý (1st pers. sing. Future)

с, з, changing to ш, ж, e.g.:—

пісáць = to write, пішý (1st pers. sing. Pres.)
мáзаць = to smear, мáжу (1st pers. sing. Pres.)

н and л become palatalized (but р remains hard), e.g.:—

рáна = wound, рáніць = to wound (Pfve.), рáню (1st pers. sing. Fut.)
калóць = to prick, калю́ (1st pers. sing. Pres.)

but—

(г)арáць = to plough, арý (1st pers. sing. Pres.), арэ́ш (2nd pers. sing. Pres.)

п, б, в, м add a palatalized л, e.g.:—

цярпе́ць = to suffer, цярплю́ (1st pers. sg. Pres.)
любі́ць = to love, люблю́ (" " ")
лаві́ць = to catch, лаўлю́ (" " ")

сц, здз (soft variants of ст, зд) change to шч, ждж (as in Ukrainian), e.g.:—

пусці́ць = to allow (Pfve.), пушчу́ (1st pers. sg. Fut.)
е́здзіць = to ride, travel, е́жджу (1st pers. sg. Pres.)

ск also changes to шч, e.g.:—

плёскаць = to splash, пляшчу́ (1st p. sg. Pres.), пле́шча (3rd p. sg. Pr.)

5. Dropping of consonants, when they occur in groups, for greater ease of pronunciation, e.g.:—

сон = dream (Indo-European root: *sup-*)
ішо́ў = went (masc.) (C.S. шьдлъ)

т and д are dropped in the groups стн, здн, e.g.:—

пачэ́сны = honourable, of honour
по́зні = late
шасна́ццаць = sixteen, cf. шэсць = six

к is dropped in the group скн, e.g.:—

ці́скаць = to press (Impfve.), but
ці́снуць = to press (Pfve.)

л is dropped in:—

со́нца = sun

д is dropped in:—

сэ́рца = heart

6. Epenthetic н is *not* used with the 3rd person Personal Pronoun, in contrast to other Slavonic languages, e.g.:—

да яго́ = to him
з ім, phon. z jim = with him
з ёй = with her

On the other hand prothetic (initial) в, as well as г, are very common, e.g.:—

ву́чань = pupil
ву́ліца = street
во́зера = lake
гэ́та = this (neut.)

(See also the last paragraphs of "The Vowels" in "Pronunciation, pp. 188.)

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN

Only the following features are exclusively Byelorussian:—

1. "dzekanie" and "cekanie", i.e. the pronunciation of the soft (sibilant) affricates дз and ц instead of palatalized д and т respectively before soft vowels, finally (for ц only) and also before в (v) followed by a soft vowel (see also "The Consonants", p. 182), e.g.:—

дзень = day
радзі́ць = to bear
мо́ладзь = youth (unvoiced дзь = ць!)
дзве = two (fem.)
ці́ха = quiet
ляце́ць = to fly
сець = net
цвярдзі́ць = to assert

2. The pronunciation of original pretonic е as я (*jakanie*) (see also "The Vowels", p. 187), e.g.:—

нясу́ = I am carrying
вялі́кі = big
бярёза = birch

This я becomes а after р and the *chuintantes*, e.g.:—

ра́ка = river
чало́ = forehead, brow

3. The development of C.S. -vъj into -ў + j (-ў- followed by a yotated vowel), e.g.:—

здаро́ўе = health
кро́ўю = with blood (Instr. sing.)

4. Assimilative changes in the pronunciation of the groups дн, бм, тц and чц (see also "The Consonants", p. 184):—

дн pronounced as нн, e.g.:—

бяння́жка for бядня́жка = poor wretch
сягго́ння, сёння = today, cf. Russian сего́дня

бм pronounced as мм, e.g.:—

абме́н = exchange, cf. Russian обме́н

тц and чц pronounced as цц, e.g.:—

ма́тцы (Dat. sing.) = to the mother
дачцэ́ (" ") = to the daughter

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN AND GREAT RUSSIAN

5. The "akanie", i.e. the pronunciation of unstressed o as a (see also "The Vowels"), e.g.:—

гара́ = hill, cf. Russian гора́
ці́ха = quiet, " " ти́хо

6. The fusion of C.S. e and ѣ into an e, which causes palatalization of the preceding consonant, e.g.:—

дзед = grandfather (e < ѣ(ě))
дзе́сяць = ten (e < e)

7. C.S. и and ы distinguished (as also in West Slav), e.g.:—

сын = son
сі́ні = blue

8. Pronunciation of stressed e as ё in certain cases (not always corresponding to Great Russian or Ukrainian), but never before *chuintantes* (as in Ukrainian, too), e.g.:—

нёс	= he carried	cf. Russ.	нёс	Ukr.	ніс
слёзы	= tears	"	слёзы	"	сльо́зи
ёсць	= is	"	есть	"	є
нясе́ш	= you (sg.) are carrying	"	несёшь	"	несе́ш
дзе́шава	= cheap	"	дёшево	"	де́шево

9. Dissyllabic adjectival endings in Nom. sing. fem., neut., Nom. pl. (see p. 219-220):—

Hard stems: сляп—а́я, -о́е, -ы́я
Soft stems: сі́н—яя, -яе, -ія.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN AND UKRAINIAN

Byelorussian has many features in common with Ukrainian.

10. The pronunciation of г as the *fricative* voiced velar ɣ, except in foreign words and in the combination зг when the plosive *g* is used. (All are now written with г.) One pronounces:—

гара́ = hill
го́лы = bare, etc., with ɣ

but—

мазгі́ = brains
грунт = foundation, etc. with phon. g

11. C.S. *d+j* changes to the affricate дж (phon. ʤ) in verbs and in some nouns, e.g.:—

сяджу́ = I am sitting
саджа́ць = to plant
раджа́ць = to bear
ураджа́й = harvest
пахо́джанне = origin

12. C.S. в and л after vowels finally in words and syllables become ў(u̯), e.g.:—

From в:—

кроў = blood
даўно́ = long ago

From л:—

даў = gave (masc.)

From C.S. *l̥, l̥'* (vocalic *l*) we have оў:—

воўк = wolf доўг = debt, loan
по́ўны = full

13. C.S. unstressed rъ, rь, lъ, lь develop into ры, лы (occasionally лі); when stressed they develop into ро, ло as in other East Slav languages, e.g.:—

крыва́вы = bloodstained
дрыжа́ць = to tremble
глыта́ць = to swallow
я́блык = apple *(Nom. sing.)*
блішча́ць = to shine

but—

дрож = shivering
гло́тка = gullet

14. Double consonants develop before vowels from C.S. combination of consonant + ъ*j* + vowel. In Byelorussian this applies to the dentals and the *chuintantes*, e.g.:—

уме́нне = learning, science
вясе́лле = wedding
суддзя́ = judge
жыццё = living, life
рыззё = rags
ро́ччу (Instr. sing.) = with a thing
збо́жжа = (harvested) corn } See p. 187 for
заці́шша = lull, quiet spot } the final -а.

15. Initial i and y are reduced to non-syllabic ĭ and ŭ before consonants, especially after a preceding word ending in a vowel. (This is not shown in the spelling of words with i.) E.g.:—

яна́ ідзе́ (pron. яна́ йдзе́) = she is going
(по́лымя) шалёна ўзвіва́ецца ўве́рх = the flame rises madly upwards

Initial *i* is sometimes lost altogether, e.g.:—

го́лка for іго́лка = needle

This rule also applies to i (= and) and y (= in, into), e.g.:—

Яны́ і на фа́брыку прыйшлі́... = they also came to the factory...
Жы́лі ў го́радзе = they lived in town

16. Loss of soft labials finally and before consonants, e.g.:—

го́луб = pigeon
сем = seven
люббо́ў = love (cf. Russian любо́вь)
п'ю = I drink (pron. p-ju)
шчы́пка = chip

17. The hard pronunciation of all *chuintantes*, including the combinations шч, ждж (see "The Consonants"). This feature is also to be found in West Slav.

18. In common with South and West Slav, and in contrast to Great Russian and Ukrainian, Byelorussian *never* has a soft р, e.g.:—

рака́ = river
бяро́за = birch
бу́ра = storm
гавару́ = I speak
гразь = mud
ро́заць = to cut
бяры́ = take!
роў = roaring (Russian: рёв)

19. Even more than in Ukrainian the sound *f* is avoided in words of long-standing use in Byelorussian, e.g.:—

ахвя́ра = sacrifice (<Pol. ofiara)
хва́ля = wave, cf. Pol. fala

(See also "The Consonants".)

20. Even more frequently than in Ukrainian, the prothetic i is used before groups of consonants, e.g.:—

ізно́ў = again
іржа́ = rust
імкліві́ = rushing, restless
імгла́ = mist
ільня́ны = flax(en)

(Morphology)

21. Widespread use of Genitive plural in **-ў for** nouns of all genders. (See "The Declension of Nouns" below.)

22. Imperfective Future can be formed with **the** suffixes -му, -меш, etc., added to the Infinitive.

23. 3rd pers. plural Present of all verbs **ends** in -ць, e.g.:—

разуме́юць = they understand

The 3rd pers. sing. Present of i-verbs also ends in -ць, e.g.:—

сядзі́ць = he is sitting
сядзя́ць 3rd pers. plural

24. The Vocative case survives in Byelorussian, but is not used with all nouns.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN, GREAT RUSSIAN AND UKRAINIAN

In common with both Great Russian and Ukrainian, Byelorussian has the following features:—

25. Development of the semivowels: ъ into о, ь into е:—

O.S. сънъ Byelorussian сон = sleep
O.S. вьсь Byelorussian ўве́сь = all

26. Development of the nasal vowels: ѫ into у, ѧ into я:—

муж = husband
пяць = five

27. Polnoglasie (see "Slavonic Characteristics", No. 1).

28. C.S. initial *je* changes to во when stressed and to *a* when unstressed, e.g.:—

вóзера = lake
адзíн = one
алéнь = stag

29. C.S. *t+j* becomes ч, e.g.:—

вярцéць = to turn, twist; вярчóны = turned (Past Part. Pass.)

30. e, ё, and o —the fill vowels when stressed, e and a when unstressed, e.g.:—

зямéль	Gen. plur.	=	of lands
вёдзер	" "	=	of pails, also вёдраў
палацён	" "	=	of cloths, canvases from палатнó, Nom. pl. палóтны
дачóк	" "		and Acc. plur. = (of) daughters
лялек	" "	=	of dolls
дóшак	" "	=	of planks

31. Use of the Genitive plural for Acc. plural for animate *personal* nouns and also for animates generally, i.e. animals, as in Russian, e.g.:—

бáчу братóў = I see the brothers
бáчу дачóк = I see the daughters

and also—

éсці рáкаў = to eat crayfish
даíць карóў = to milk cows

---

32. Original ы and i are preserved before j (in contrast to Great Russian). Hence in the adjectives we have:—

злы = evil
дурны = stupid
такí = such

and in the verbs:—

пі[й] = drink!
лі[й] = pour!
мыю = I wash
шыю = I sew
падысцí = to approach
адысцí = to go away

Likewise in the nouns we have -ы- preserved in the roots, e.g.:—

шыя = neck
памыі = slops

This feature is also to be found in West and South Slav.

BYELORUSSIAN MORPHOLOGY

Owing to the "phonetic" spelling of the vowels in Byelorussian its declensions and conjugations give the *appearance* of being totally different (in part at least) from those in any other Slavonic language. But if the student bears in mind the similar modification of unstressed vowels in Great Russian, which underlies the apparent (spelling) uniformity of flexion in that language, he will realize the fundamental similarity of the declensions and conjugations in Byelorussian to those in Russian and other Slavonic languages. For what *in fact* is the case, is merely this: that owing to this "phonetic" spelling, declensions and conjugations with final stress are spelt differently from those with non-final stress.

Byelorussian morphology does, however, have features peculiarly its own. Very striking is the absence of -a as the ending of neuter nouns in the plural; it is replaced by -ы for hard stems and -i for soft stems. The spread of the ending -óў (soft version: -ёў) and -аў (soft: -яў)—unstressed, for the Genitive plural of some feminine and neuter nouns, as well as masculine, is also noticeable. The old termination -i has been preserved for the Locative singular of many nouns with soft stems and also for the Dative singular of feminine soft nouns. These cases terminate with -ы after p and *chuintantes*, another Byelorussian peculiarity.

In the declension of adjectives the endings of the Genitive singular feminine (-óе, -ае) and the Nominative plural (-ыя) are noteworthy. While the Personal Pronouns of the third person ён, янá, янó, яны are unique with their prefixed yot.

In the conjugation of the verbs, the termination -ць for the 3rd person singular and plural Present has already been noted. As in Ukrainian the 2nd person plural Present of finally stressed verbs is stressed on the *second* syllable of the ending, e.g.:—

несяцé

Otherwise the main features of modern Slavonic morphology are preserved: the three genders and the two numbers, the dual having been lost. The Vocative case is obsolescent, but the other six cases are in full use.

THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Hard and soft varieties of declension have already been mentioned. The familiar types of noun declensions survive:—

i-stems —feminine,

consonantal stems—neuter,

a-stems —mostly feminine,

o-stems —masculine and neuter.

The *ŭ*-stems leave many traces in the masculine declensions.

The Accusative of masculine animate nouns is the same as the Genitive in the singular, but in the plural Acc.=Gen. for all nouns denoting animate beings (see "Characteristics of Byelorussian", No. 31, for examples).

1. *i*-stems, only feminine, ending in a soft consonant or *chuintante* or -ў (from -вь):—

косць = bone; кроў = blood; рэч = thing

		Stressing ending	*Stressing stem:*
SINGULAR			
Nom.	косць	кроў	рэч
Gen.	кóсці[1]	крыві	рэ́чы
Dat.	кóсці[1]	крыві	рэ́чы
Acc.	косць	кроў	рэч
Instr.	кóсцю	крывёю (-й) (крóўю)	рэ́ччу
Loc.	кóсці[1]	крыві	рэ́чы
PLURAL			
Nom.	кóсці		рэ́чы
Gen.	касцéй		рэ́чаў
Dat.	касця́м		рэ́чам
Acc.	кóсці		рэ́чы
Instr.	касця́мі (касцьмі)		рэ́чамі
Loc.	касця́х		рэ́чах

The ending of the Genitive plural is either -éй (-э́й) or -аў.

[1]For these cases, the Academy Grammar, Граматыка беларускай мовы, vol. 1, 1962, gives the form: касці́, used in certain phrases after prepositions, e.g. на касці́ = on the bone.

Мáці can have this one form for all cases of the singular and plural. It can also decline as follows: Sing. N. мáці, G.D.L. мáцеры, A. мáцеру, I. мáцерай (-аю), Plur. N. мáцеры, G.A. мацярэ́й, D. мацяр-áм, I. -áмі, L. -áх.

Pluralia tantum belonging to this declension are:—

сéні = entrance hall
грýдзі = breast
гýслі = dulcimer
дзвéры = door

Like the plural of the above are declined:—

кýры = hens, G. курэ́й, D. курáм
сусéдзі = neighbours (from сусéд)
чэ́рці = devils (from чорт)
лю́дзі = people (from люд), I. людзьмі́

2. Consonant stems, with -н- and -ц/т-. Neuters only. Those with -н- all end in -мя in the Nom. sing. Those with -ц- in the singular and -т- in the plural all denote young beings or else things.

імя́ = name

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	імя́	імёны, і́мі
Gen.	і́мені, імя́	імён(аў), і́мяў
Dat.	і́мені, і́мю	імёнам, і́мям
Acc.	імя́	імёны, і́мі
Instr.	і́менем, і́мем	імёнамі, і́мямі
Loc.	і́мені, і́мі	імёнах, і́мях

ягня = lamb

Nom.	ягня́, ягнё	ягня́ты
Gen.	ягня́ці	ягня́т(аў)
Dat.	ягня́ці	ягня́там
Acc.	ягня́, ягнё	ягня́т
Instr.	ягнём	ягня́тамі
Loc.	ягня́ці	ягня́тах

бярэ́мя (= armful), сéмя (= seed), пóлымя (= flame), вы́мя (= udder), цéмя (= crown of the head) are declined without the syllable -ен-, see імя́.

Those like ягня́ all have the alternative ending -ё (or -о after a *chuintante*), e.g.:—

дзяўчó or дзяўчá = girl
княжó or княжá = young duke

кóла (= a wheel) has a plural калёсы (= vehicle) besides its normal plural кóлы (= wheels).

нéба (= sky) has a plural нябёсы.

3. *a*-stems, mostly feminine.

The hard stem endings have replaced the original soft stem endings in the Gen. sing. and Nom. Acc. plural of the soft, *ja*-stem version of this declension, as in Ukrainian; but the original soft declension ending -i has been preserved in the Dat. and Loc. sing. Instr. sing. ends in either -ю or -й.

The difference between finally stressed and non-finally stressed nouns in this declension is only apparent in the spelling of the Instr. sing. of both hard and soft nouns and in the Dat., Loc. sing. of velar stems, the unstressed having -ы, a peculiarity of Byelorussian.

Hard stems:

	галава́ = head *Final stress:*	калі́на = guelder rose *Non-final stress:*
SINGULAR		
Nom.	галава́	калі́на
Gen.	галавы́	калі́ны
Dat.	галаве́	калі́не
Acc.	галаву́	калі́ну
Instr.	галаво́ю (-й)	калі́наю (-й)
Loc.	галаве́	калі́не
PLURAL		
Nom.	гало́вы	калі́ны
Gen.	гало́ў	калі́н
Dat.	гало́вам	калі́нам
Acc.	гало́вы	калі́ны
Instr.	гало́вамі	калі́намі
Loc.	гало́вах	калі́нах

Velar stems:

	рука́ = hand *Final stress:*	го́рка = hillock *Non-final stress:*
SINGULAR		
Nom.	рука́	го́рка
Gen.	руки́	го́ркі
Dat.	руцэ́	го́рцы
Acc.	руку́	го́рку
Instr.	руко́ю (-й)	го́ркаю (-й)
Loc.	руцэ́	го́рцы

PLURAL		
Nom.	ру́кі	го́ркі
Gen.	рук	го́рак
Dat.	рука́м	го́ркам
Acc.	ру́кі	го́ркі
Instr.	рука́мі	го́ркамі
Loc.	рука́х	го́рках

Soft stems:

	зямля́ = earth, land	дóля = portion, lot
SINGULAR		PLURAL / SINGULAR
Nom.	зямля́	зе́млі / дóля
Gen.	зямлі́	зяме́ль / дóлі
Dat.	зямлі́	зе́млям / дóлі
Acc.	зямлю́	зе́млі / дóлю
Instr.	зямлёю (-й)	зе́млямі / дóляю (-й)
Loc.	зямлі́	зе́млях / дóлі

Hardened (originally soft) stem:

зара́ = dawn, twilight; star

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Nom.	зара́	зо́ры
Gen.	зары́	зор[1]
Dat.	зары́	зо́рам
Acc.	зару́	зо́ры
Instr.	заро́ю -й	зо́рамі
Loc.	зары́	зо́рах

No *a*-stems have finally stressed plurals.

In this declension the Dat. and Loc. sing. are always the same. Velar stems undergo the 2nd Palatalization before the final -э́ or -ы of Dat. and Loc. sing. Stems in -т- and -д-, of course, end in -це, -дзе in Dat. and Loc. sing., e.g.:—

рабóта (= work), Dat., Loc. sing.: рабóце

All nouns with stems in -р, -ц, -ч, -ж, and -ш (as well as non-finally stressed ones in -к) have the ending -ы in these cases, as well as in the Gen. sing. (except for those in -к), e.g.:—

душы́ from душа́ = soul
ву́ліцы from ву́ліца = street

The Gen. plural either has no ending (with the insertion of a fill-vowel in some consonantal groups)

[1]The ending -аў occurs in feminine nouns only after consonant groups, e.g. кóўдраў = of blankets.

or else rarely -аў for hard stems and -яў for soft stems (from the masc. nouns). Рук from рука́ (= hand) and ног from нага́ (= leg, foot) never have this ending.

Masc. nouns in -а are declined exactly like the above, except that in the Dat. and Loc. sing. they can end in -у (-ю) and in the Inst. sing. many prefer the ending -ам (-ём). E.g.:—

ста́раста	= village head,	D.L.s. стара́сту (-сце)
		I.s. стара́стам
суддзя́	= judge,	D.L.s. суддзю́ (-і́)
		I.s. суддзём
саба́ка *m.!*	= dog,	D.L.s. саба́ку
		I.s. саба́кам

4a. Masculine *o*-stems.

In the singular the differences between the old hard and soft declensions are preserved, e.g. the Loc. sing. of soft stems in -і. In the plural of finally stressed hard stems the old *ŭ*-stem ending -овъ, now -о́ў, predominates in the Gen. In the modern literary language the old fem. endings with -а- have now been generalized for the Dat., Instr. and Loc. plur., which have -ам, -амі, -ах respectively.

In the non-finally stressed nouns а replaces о in the endings of the Instr. sing. and Gen. plural in the hard stems, and correspondingly е replaces ё in the Instr. sing. and я replaces ё in the Gen. plural of the soft stems.

Finally stressed hard stems:

	стол = table	пясо́к = sand	дождж = rain
SINGULAR			
Nom.	стол [1]	пясо́к [2]	дождж [3]
Gen.	стала́	пяску́	дождж́у
Dat.	сталу́	пяску́	дождж́у
Acc.	стол	пясо́к	дождж
Instr.	сталО́М	пяскО́М	дождж́О́М
Loc.	стале́	пяску́	дождж́ы

[1]Exactly like стол are declined the animate hard stems, e.g.: вол (= ox), but they have their Acc. sing. and Acc. plur. like their Gen. sing. and plur. respectively, e.g. вала́, валоў.

[2]The old *u*-stem ending -у predominates in the Gen. and Loc. sing. of most velar stems, though we have the animate хвалько́ (= boaster) with Gen. sing. хвалька́ but Loc. sing. хвалькý.

[3]кане́ц (= end) has Gen. sing. канца́, otherwise it goes like дождж.

PLURAL			
Nom.	сталы́	пяскі́	дождж́ы
Gen.	сталО́ў	пяскО́ў	дождж́О́ў
Dat.	стала́М	пяска́М	дождж́а́М
Acc.	сталы́	пяскі́	дождж́ы
Instr.	стала́мі	пяска́мі	дождж́а́мі
Loc.	стала́х	пяска́х	дождж́а́х

Non-finally stressed hard stems:

	брат = brother	нарóд = people
SINGULAR		
Nom.	брат	нарóд
Gen.	бра́та	нарóду, -а
Dat.	бра́ту	нарóду
Acc.	бра́та	нарóд
Instr.	бра́там	нарóдам
Loc.	бра́ту	нарóдзе
PLURAL		
Nom.	браты́	нарóды
Gen.	братО́ў	нарóдаў
Dat.	брата́М	нарóдам
Acc.	братО́ў	нарóды
Instr.	брата́мі	нарóдамі
Loc.	брата́х	нарóдах

Soft stems:

	лось = elk	лóкаць = elbow
	Finally stressed	*Non-finally stressed*
SINGULAR		
Nom.	лось	лóкаць
Gen.	лася́	лóкця
Dat.	ласю́	лóкцю
Acc.	лася́	лóкаць
Instr.	ласём	лóкцем
Loc.	ласі́	лóкці
PLURAL		
Nom.	ласі́	лóкці
Gen.	ласёў	лóкцяў
Dat.	лася́М	лóкцям
Acc.	ласёў	лóкці
Instr.	лася́мі	лóкцямі
Loc.	лася́х	лóкцях

	конь = horse	звы́чай = custom
	Shifting stress and irregular	*Non-finally stressed j-stem*
SINGULAR		
Nom.	конь	звы́чай[1]
Gen.	каня́	звы́чаю
Dat.	каню́	звы́чаю
Acc.	каня́	звы́чай
Instr.	канём	звы́чаем
Loc.	кані́	звы́чаі
PLURAL		
Nom.	ко́ні[2]	звы́чаі
Gen.	ко́ней	звы́чаяў
Dat.	ко́ням	звы́чаям
Acc.	ко́ней	звы́чаі
Instr.	ко́ньмі	звы́чаямі
Loc.	ко́нях	звы́чаях

(1) There is no absolute rule as to when the *Gen. sing.* ends in -а (soft -я) and when in -у (soft -ю). Animate nouns, the names of visible objects, organizations, places, measures, definitions, parts of the body, the names of the months and days have -а, e.g.:—

во́ўка or ваўка́ from воўк = wolf
но́са from нос = nose
сакавіка́ from сакаві́к = March

Other masculine nouns mostly have -у.

(2) The regular ending for the *Loc. sing.* of hard stems is -е, before which a few velar stems undergo the 2nd Palatalization, e.g.:—

гаро́х = pea(s)
у гаро́се = in the pea(s)

Inanimate nouns with stems in р, ц or the *chuintantes* ж, ш, ч, have -ы, e.g.:—

бор = coniferous forest, у бары́ = in the forest
нож = knife, на нажы́ = on the knife

[1]A finally stressed *j*-stem such as вераб'е́й (= sparrow), follows the declension of лось exactly, forming the cases from the stem вераб'-, e.g.: Gen. sing. вераб'я́, Gen.pl. вераб'ёў.

[2]These forms with initial stress have the collective meaning of "horse(s)". When considered individually in numbers, forms with final stress are used: N. кані́, G.A. канёў, D. каня́м, I. каня́мі, L. каня́х.

But animate nouns with such stems have -у, e.g.—

аб купцу́ = about the merchant
пры Рыго́ру = near Gregory

Nouns with stems in -к nearly always have -у, e.g.:—

аб ваўку́ = about the wolf
аб чалаве́ку = about the man

and most nouns with stems in -г and -х, e.g.:—

у кругу́ = in a circle
у сме́ху = in laughter

The regular Loc. sing. ending for all soft stems is -і, e.g.:—

аб вераб'і́ = about a sparrow
аб салаўі́ = about a nightingale

Some occasionally have -ю, e.g.:—

на каню́ as well as на кані́ = on a horse

(3) The *Voc. sing.* is occasionally used for masc. nouns. It ends in—

-е for most hard stems, e.g.:—

бра́це! = brother!

-у for к-stems, e.g.:—

сы́нку! = sonny!

-а after *chuintantes*, e.g.:—

во́ўча! = wolf!

-ю for soft stems, e.g.:—

го́сцю! = guest!

(4) A few nouns have no ending in the *Gen. plural*, e.g.:—

дзень (= day), Gen. plur. дзён
пяць чалаве́к = five people

and all nouns with Nom. sing. in -анін, -янін, -ін, -ын have such a Gen. plur., e.g.:—

грамадзя́нін (= citizen), Gen. plur. грамадзя́н

The nouns in -анін, -янін drop the syllable -ін- in the plural and have Nom. plur. e.g. грамадзя́не, Dat. plur. грамадзя́нам, etc.

A few nouns have Gen. plur. in -ей, e.g.:—

ко́ней	= of horses,	from конь
гасце́й	= of guests,	from госць
людзе́й	= of people,	from лю́дзі (*i*-stem)
лапце́й	= of bast shoes,	from ла́паць

4b. Neuter *o*-stems.

These end in -о when finally stressed and hard, and in -ё when finally stressed and soft. Non-finally stressed neuters end in -а when hard [*sic*] and -я when soft. Soft stems preserve the old Loc. sing. ending -і, while stems in р, ц and the *chuintantes* have -ы in this case.

Nom., Voc. and Acc. are always the same as each other in each number. The regular ending of the Nom., Voc., Acc. plural is -ы [*sic*] for hard stems and -і for soft stems. Otherwise the same correspondences of vowels in terminations hold good as for masc. *o*-stems. Notice also the shifting of the stress in the plurals.

Finally stressed (but not in plural):

	сяло́ = large village *Hard stem*	пляча́ = shoulder *Chuintante stem*
SINGULAR		
Nom.	сяло́	пляча́
Gen.	сяла́	пляча́
Dat.	сялу́	пляча́
Acc.	сяло́	пляча́
Instr.	сяло́м	пляча́м
Loc.	сяле́	пляча́
PLURAL		
Nom.	сёлы	пле́чы
Gen.	сёл(аў)	пляча́й
Dat.	сёлам	пляча́м
Acc.	сёлы	пле́чы
Instr.	сёламі	пляча́мі
Loc.	сёлах	пляча́х

Non-finally stressed:

	пале́на = log *Hard stem*	мо́ра = sea *r-stem*
SINGULAR		
Nom.	пале́на	мо́ра
Gen.	пале́на	мо́ра
Dat.	пале́ну	мо́ру
Acc.	пале́на	мо́ра
Instr.	пале́нам	мо́рам
Loc.	пале́не	мо́ры
PLURAL		
Nom.	пале́ны	мо́ры
Gen.	пале́наў	мо́раў
Dat.	пале́нам	мо́рам
Acc.	пале́ны	мо́ры
Instr.	пале́намі	мо́рамі
Loc.	пале́нах	мо́рах

	Finally stressed soft stems:	*Non-finally stressed soft stems:*	
	жыццё = life	по́ле = field	здарэ́нне = event (like по́ле in singular)
SING.			
Nom.	жыццё	по́ле	здарэ́нне
Gen.	жыцця́	по́ля	
Dat.	жыццю́	по́лю	
Acc.	жыццё	по́ле	
Instr.	жыццём	по́лем	
Loc.	жыцці́	по́лі	
		(Plural finally stressed)	(Plural non-finally stressed in:—)
PLUR.			
Nom.	(None)	палі́	здарэ́нні
Gen.		палёў	здарэ́нняў
Dat.		паля́м	здарэ́нням
Acc.		палі́	здарэ́нні
Instr.		паля́мі	здарэ́ннямі
Loc.		паля́х	здарэ́ннях

The rule for the ending of the *Loc. sing.* is the same as for masc. *o*-stems. х- and к-stems have -у, e.g.:—

ве́ка = lid, Loc. sing. аб ве́ку; but малако́ = milk, has (у) малацэ́.

The *Gen. plural* can also have no ending, with a fill-vowel appearing in difficult consonant groups, e.g.:—

вядро́ = pail, Gen. plur. вёдзер or вёдраў
акно́ = window, Gen. plur. акóн or вóкнаў

Notice ярмó (= yoke), Nom. plur. ёрмы.

After the numerals два (= two), тры (= three), чаты́ры (= four), "false" Dual forms are used:—

два, тры, чаты́ры сялы́, вядры́, вакны́, ярмы́, cf. Nom. plur.: сёлы, вёдры, вóкны, ёрмы.

(For *feminine* nouns the "false" Dual is the same in form as the Gen. sing., e.g.:—

труба́ = pipe, Gen. sing. трубы́, Nom. plur. тру́бы,
but—дзве трубы́ = two pipes.)

вóка (= eye) and ву́ха (= ear) are irregular and are declined as follows:—

SING.		
Nom.	вóка	ву́ха (also вухó)
Gen.	вóка	ву́ха
Dat.	вóку	ву́ху
Acc.	вóка	ву́ха
Instr.	вóкам	ву́хам
Loc.	вóку	ву́ху
PLUR.		
Nom.	вóчы	ву́шы
Gen.	вачэ́й	вушэ́й
Dat.	вача́м	уша́м
Acc.	вóчы	ву́шы
Instr.	вача́мі	уша́мі
Loc.	вача́х	уша́х

THE NUMERALS

Cardinal.—In Byelorussian, as in Ukrainian and West Slav (and in Old Slavonic), the numbers 1-4 are adjectival and agree with the noun they qualify in case (and gender for "one" and "two"). Two, three and four are followed by the noun in the plural, if masculine, in the Nom. when subject, in the Acc. when object, etc., and by "false" Dual forms for feminine and neuter nouns (see examples under Neuter *o*-stems, p. 212). 5, 6 onwards are nouns and are followed by the noun in the Gen. plural, when they themselves are in the Nom. as subject or in the Acc. as object; in

the other cases they agree with the noun they qualify.

The declension of адзі́н (= one) follows in the main the hard adjectival declension (q.v. below), but the peculiar terminations, partly due to final stress, should be noted when they occur, viz.:—

SING.	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*Plur.* *(All genders)*
Nom.	адзі́н	адно́	адна́	адны́
Gen.	аднаго́		адно́й (аднае́)	адны́х
Dat.	аднаму́		адно́й	адны́м
Acc.	(=Nom. or Gen.)	адно́	адну́	(=Nom. or Gen.)
Inst.	адны́м		адно́й (-бю)	адны́мі
Loc.	адны́м		адно́й	адны́х

два (= two) varies according to gender and should also be noted:—

	Masc. and Neut.	*Fem.*
Nom.	два	дзве
Gen.	двух	дзвюх
Dat.	двум	дзвюм
Acc.	два	дзве
Inst.	двума́	дзвюма́
Loc.	двух	дзвюх

Like два, абóдва (= both).

	Masc.	*Nom. Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Gen./Loc.*	*Dat.*	*Instr.*
1	адзі́н	адна́	адно́	(see above)		
2	два	дзве	два			
3	тры			трох	тром	трыма́
4	чаты́ры			чатырóх	чатырóм	чатырма́
5	пяць			пяці́	пяці́	пяццю́
6	шэсць	6-30 are declined like пяць				
7	сем					
8	вóсем			васьмі́	васьмі́	васьмю́
9	дзе́вяць					
10	дзе́сяць					
11	адзіна́ццаць					
12	двана́ццаць					
13	трына́ццаць					
14	чатырна́ццаць					
15	пятна́ццаць					
16	шасна́ццаць					
17	семна́ццаць					
18	васемна́ццаць					
19	дзевятна́ццаць					
20	два́ццаць					
21	два́ццаць адзі́н					
30	тры́ццаць					
40	сóрак			сарака́	сарака́	сарака́

50	пяцьдзеся́т	G.L.D. пяцідзесяці́	I. пяццюдзесяццю́	
60	шэсцьдзеся́т			
70	се́мдзесят	decline like пяцьдзеся́т		
80	во́семдзесят			
90	дзевяно́ста (invariable)			
100	сто	ста	ста	ста
101	сто адзі́н			
200	дзве́сце	G. двухсо́т	L. двухста́х	D. двумста́м
		I. двумаста́мі		
300	тры́ста	decline like дзве́сце		
400	чаты́рыста			
500	пяцьсо́т	G. пяцісо́т	L. пяціста́х	D. пяціста́м
		I. пяццюста́мі		
600	шэсцьсо́т	decline like пяцьсо́т		
700	семсо́т			
800	восемсо́т			
900	дзевяцьсо́т			
1,000	ты́сяча			
2,000	дзве ты́сячы			
1,000,000	мільён			

The numerals from 50 to 80 need not be declined in colloquial speech.

The hundreds may also be left undeclined, or decline as above.

Masc. and neut.	*fem.*		
паўтара́	паўтары́	(=1½)	are not declined.
паўтраця́	паўтраці́	(=2½)	
(паўчварта́	паўчварты́)[1]	(=3½)	
(паўпята́	паўпяты́)[1]	(=4½)	

Ordinal.—The Ordinal Numerals are all declined like the hard-stem adjective бо́сы (= barefoot), except the velar stem другі́ (= second), the soft stem трэ́ці (= third), and the finally stressed hard stem саракавы́ (= fortieth), which follows сляпы́ (= blind). (For full declension see "Adjectives".)

In compound Ordinals only the last element is ordinal, as in "101st" below.

1st	пе́ршы	7th	сёмы
2nd	другі́	8th	во́сьмы
3rd	трэ́ці	9th	дзевя́ты
4th	чацвёрты	10th	дзеся́ты
5th	пя́ты	11th	адзіна́ццаты
6th	шо́сты	12th	двана́ццаты

[1] These forms are rare. There is also: паўчацверта́, -ы́ = 3½.

13th	трына́ццаты	40th	саракавы́
14th	чатырна́ццаты	50th	пяцідзеся́ты
15th	пятна́ццаты	60th	шэсцідзеся́ты
16th	шасна́ццаты	70th	семідзеся́ты
17th	семна́ццаты	80th	васьмідзеся́ты
18th	васемна́ццаты	90th	дзевяно́сты
19th	дзевятна́ццаты	100th	со́ты
20th	двацца́ты	101st	сто пе́ршы
21st	два́ццаць пе́ршы	200th	двухсо́ты
30th	трыцца́ты	300th	трохсо́ты[1]

Collective.—Collective numerals are used for nouns of mixed gender, e.g. "a man and a woman," or "a mare (кабы́ла, fem.) and a foal (жарабя́, neut.)". Similarly, або́е (= both) is used for nouns of mixed gender, while або́два is used for masc. and neut. nouns and абе́дзве for fem. nouns, e.g.:—

або́два браты́, вакны́ = both brothers, windows
абе́дзве сястры́, сахі́ = both sisters, ploughs

("False" Dual forms are used with neut. and fem. nouns, it will be observed. Cf. p. 212.)

Nom.	дво́е[2] = two	чацвёра[3] = four
Gen.	два́іх	чацвяры́х
Dat.	два́ім	чацвяры́м
Acc.	(= Nom. or Gen.)	(Nom. or Gen.)
Inst.	два́імі	чацвяры́мі
Loc.	два́іх	чацвяры́х

Distributive.—Distributive numerals are expressed by па + Cardinal numerals, e.g.:—

па два = two each

THE PRONOUNS

The declension of the 3rd person Personal Pronoun gives a clue to the adjectival declension in Byelorussian too, but owing to the difference in the position of the stress and the phonetic spelling, this is less obvious at first glance.

[1] 1000th = ты́сячны, 1,000,000th = мільённы.

[2] або́е (= both) and тро́е (= three) are identically declined.

[3] The remaining Collectives, пяцёра (= five) onwards, are declined like чацвёра, though they can be left undeclined.

The usual categories of pronouns are to be found in Byelorussian, namely:—

Demonstrative:	гэ́ты	= this
	гэ́ны	= that (yonder)
	той	= that
Interrogative:	хто?	= who?
	што?	= what?
	катóры?	= which?
	чый? (declinable)	= whose?
	якí?	= of what kind?
Indefinite:	нéхта	= someone
	нéшта	= something
	нéякі(сь) (нéйкі)	= some sort of
	хтось (хтóсьці)	= anybody, somebody
	штось (штóсьці)	= something
Relative: The same in form as the Interrogative Pronouns.		
Possessive:	мой	= my, mine
	твой	= your(s), (familiar)
	свой	= (one's) own
	наш, fem. *and neut.* нáша	= our(s)
	ваш, fem. *and neut.* вáша	= your(s)
	íхні[1]	= their(s)
Definitive:	увéсь	= all
	усякі	= every, any
	кóжны	= each
	сам	= -self
	сáмы	= "the very", -self
	той сáмы	= the same
	такí	= such
	гэ́ткі	= of this kind
	íншы	= other
Negative:	ніхтó	= no one
	нішто́	= nothing
	нівóдны / нівóдзін	= not one
	ніякі	= not of any kind
Personal:	ён	= he
	я	= I
	ты	= you (familiar)
	сябé (Reflexive)	= -self

[1]Also: ягóны = his, its, éйны = her(s) (less frequent).

The majority of the pronouns in Byelorussian are now declined like adjectives (see below) with the same variations of spelling in the endings depending on whether they are finally stressed or not.

Thus наш, гэ́ты, гэ́ны, кóжны, катóры, etc. follow the declension of бóсы, while якí, такí follow сляпы́. Нáшую, вáшую, Acc. sing. fem., are now abbreviated to нáшу, вáшу. The Acc. sing. fem. of гэ́ты is гэ́ту.

(There are no enclitic forms for Personal Pronouns in Byelorussian.)

We give below the declensions of those pronouns which differ in any way from the adjectival models mentioned. Acc. sing. masc. = Gen. sing. masc. for animate nouns, but = Nom. sing. masc. for inanimates, except in the Personal Pronouns. In the plural, Acc. = Gen. with reference to animate nouns of *all* genders.

той = that

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All genders*
Nom.	той	тóе	тáя	тыя
Gen.	тагó		той (таé)	тых
Dat.	тамý		той	тым
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	тóе	тýю	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	тым		той (тóю)	тымі
Loc.	тым		той	тых

	хто = who	што = what
Nom.	хто	што
Gen.	кагó	чагó
Dat.	камý	чамý
Acc.	кагó	што
Inst.	кім	чым
Loc.	кім	чым

The Indefinite Pronouns with the suffix -сь or -сьці decline the preceding portion, e.g.:—хтось, кагóсь, etc.

увéсь = all

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All genders*
Nom.	увéсь	усё	уся́	усé
Gen.	усягó		усёй	усíх
Dat.	усямý		усёй	усíм
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	усё	усю́	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	усíм		усёй(-ю)[1]	усíмі
Loc.	усíм		усёй	усíх

[1]-й can replace -ю in this case in all pronouns and adjectives, as in a-stem nouns.

мой = my

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All genders*
Nom.	мой	маё	мая́	маé
Gen.	майгó		маёй	маíх
Dat.	майму́		маёй	маíм
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	маё	маó	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	маíм		маёй(-ю)	маíмі
Loc.	маíм		маёй	маíх

Like мой: твой = your(s), свой = (one's) own, чый = whose?.

сам = -self

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All genders*
Nom.	сам	самó	сама́	са́мі
Gen.	самóга		самóй, самаé	самíх
Dat.	самóму		самóй	самíм
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	самó	саму́(ю)	самíх
Inst.	самíм		самóй(ю)	самíмі
Loc.	самíм		самóй	самíх

The Personal Pronouns

ён = he янó = it яна́ = she яны́ = they

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All genders*
Nom.	ён	янó	яна́	яны́
Gen.	ягó		яé	іх[1]
Dat.	ягó		ёй	ім[1]
Acc.	ягó		яé	іх[1]
Inst.	ім[1]		ёй(ёю)	і́мі[1]
Loc.	ім[1]		ёй	іх[1]

After prepositions the *same* forms are used, *without* н prefixed, in contrast to other Slavonic languages. ягó can be used for "his" and "its", яé for "her"—Possessive (they are both invariable), but also the declinable ягóны = his, its, ёйны = her(s).

SING.		
Nom.	я = I	ты = you (familiar)
Gen.	мяне́	цябé
Dat.	мне	табé
Acc.	мяне́	цябé
Inst.	мнóй(-ю)	табóй(-ю)
Loc.	мне	табé

[1]Forms with initial і in the spelling are all pronounced with initial ji: phon. jim, jix, 'jimi.

PLUR.		
Nom.	мы = we	вы = you
Gen.	нас	вас
Dat.	нам	вам
Acc.	нас	вас
Inst.	на́мі	ва́мі
Loc.	нас	вас

сябé (= -self) follows the declension of ты without the Nom.

ADJECTIVES

The declension of adjectives in Byelorussian falls into four main types:—

(a) hard stems, finally stressed,
(b) hard stems, non-finally stressed,
(c) soft stems (these are never finally stressed),
(d) Possessive adjectives.

Stems in a *chuintante* belong to the hard-stem category *(b)*, e.g. гара́чы = hot.

Stems in a velar (including surnames in -скі) also belong to the hard stems, but substitute і for ы in all the endings which contain ы in the ordinary hard declension.

The ending of the Nom. sing. masc. is monosyllabic, but those of the Nom. sing. fem. and neut. and of the Nom. plural (for all genders) are dissyllabic, as in Great Russian.

The Acc. sing. masc. = Gen. sing. masc. for animate nouns, but = Nom. sing. masc. for inanimate nouns.

The Acc. plur. = Gen. plur. for animate nouns of all genders.

In contrast to Russian, the Instr. and Loc. sing. masc. and neut. are the same, both ending in -ым (soft -ім).

The dissyllabic ending in the Gen. sing. fem. is peculiar to Byelorussian (cf. Lusatian).

(a) сляпы́ = blind; *(b)* бóсы = barefoot; *(c)* сíні = blue

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All genders*
Nom.	сляпы́	сляпóе	сляпа́я	сляпы́я
Gen.	сляпóга		сляпóй(-е)	сляпы́х
Dat.	сляпóму		сляпóй	сляпы́м
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.	сляпóе	сляпу́ю	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	сляпы́м		сляпóй(-ю)	сляпы́мі
Loc.	сляпы́м		сляпóй	сляпы́х

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All genders*
Nom.	бо́сы	бо́сае	бо́сая	бо́сыя
Gen.	бо́саага		бо́саай(-е)	бо́сых
Dat.	бо́саму		бо́саай	бо́сым
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.		бо́сае	бо́сую	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	бо́сым		бо́саай(-ю)	бо́сымі
Loc.	бо́сым		бо́саай	бо́сых

Nom.	сі́ні	сі́няе	сі́няя	сі́нія
Gen.	сі́няга		сі́няй(-е)	сі́ніх
Dat.	сі́няму		сі́няй	сі́нім
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.		сі́няе	сі́нюю	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	сі́нім		сі́няй(-ю)	сі́німі
Loc.	сі́нім		сі́няй	сі́ніх

There also exists a short form of the adjectives, mostly used predicatively and in poetry. It is not usually declined.

The terminations for the Nom., then, are:—

Masc. sing.: no ending (with a fill-vowel in consonant groups) (soft -ь)
Fem. sing.: -а (soft -я)
Neut. sing.: -о́ or -а (soft -я)

Plural all genders: -ы (soft -і), e.g.:—

		SINGULAR			PLURAL
		Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
гро́зны	= terrible	гро́зен	гро́зна	гро́зна	гро́зны
чо́рны	= black	чо́ран	чо́рна	чо́рна	чо́рны
по́ўны	= full	по́вен	по́ўна	по́ўна	по́ўны
сі́ні	= blue	сінь	сі́ня	сі́ня	сі́ні

Possessive adjectives in -скі such as ба́цькаўскі (= father's), are declined like the hard (velar) stems above. Those in -ў and -н have special endings of their own only in the Nom. s. and pl. and Acc. s. fem., viz.:—

ма́тчын = mother's

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	PLUR. *All genders*
Nom.	ма́тчын	ма́тчына	ма́тчына	ма́тчыны
Gen.	ма́тчынага[1]		ма́тчынай(-ае)	ма́тчыных
Dat.	ма́тчынаму		ма́тчынай	ма́тчыным
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.		ма́тчына	ма́тчыну	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	ма́тчыным		ма́тчынай	ма́тчынымі
Loc.	ма́тчыным		ма́тчынай	ма́тчыных

So also: ба́цькаў, ба́цькавага, etc. = father's.

[1]Only possessive adjectives formed from names have Gen. sing. masc. and neut. in -а, e.g. Рыго́раў = Gregory's, Gen. s. m., n. Рыго́рава.

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives expressing a quality, colour, etc., have three degrees of comparison. The Comparative is formed by adding -ейшы, -ейшая (-эйшы, -эйшая), etc., to the root of the Positive. The Superlative is formed by prefixing най- to the Comparative, or with са́мы, etc. + the Positive.

Positive: зялёны, -ая, -ае = green
ні́зкі, -ая, -ае = low
сі́ні, -яя, -яе = blue
стро́гі, -ая, -ае = strict

Comparative: зелянёйшы, -ая, -ае
ніжэ́йшы, -ая, -ае
сінёйшы, -ая, -ае
стражэ́йшы, -ая, -ае

Superlative: (за ўсіх, ад усі́х) найзелянёйшы, -ая, -ае
(за ўсіх, ад усі́х) найсі́нейшы, -ая, -ае
or else—
са́мы зялёны, са́мая зялёная, etc.
са́мы сі́ні, etc.

Notice the irregular comparison of the following adjectives:—

		Comp.	*Sup.*
до́бры	= good	ле́пшы	найле́пшы
благі́, дрэ́нны	= bad	го́ршы	найго́ршы
малы́	= small	ме́ншы	etc.
вялі́кі	= big	бо́льшы	
шыро́кі	= broad	шы́ршы	
глыбо́кі	= deep	глыбе́йшы	
ву́зкі	= narrow	вузе́йшы	
N.B. малады́	= young	маладзе́йшы, but	мало́дшы = junior

The Comparative and Superlative degrees follow the declension of the Positive hard stem бо́сы.

Very = ве́льмі, ду́жа
Than = чым, чы́мся, ніх, як
or—
за + Acc., e.g.:—
нямá бо́лей за пяць = there are no more than five
Rather better (adj.) = крыху́ ле́пшы
Rather good = до́сыць до́бры
Less than = менш чым
The bigger...*the* better = чым бо́льшы... тым ле́пшы

As (big) *as*	= таксáма вялíкі як
As soon as possible	= як (*or* чым *or* што) найхутчэ́й
As fast as possible	= магчы́ма як найхутчэ́й
The very best of all	= найлéпшы за ўсíх, найлéпшы ад усíх
Too	= (за)нáдта; too much = за шмат
The same as	= той сáмы што
In the same way as	= таксáма, як

ADVERBS

Adverbs of manner, formed from adjectives, end in -а (unstressed), e.g.:—

дóбры = good—дóбра = well
благí = bad —блáга = badly (with shifted stress)

Adverbs from adjectives in -скі, however, have па- prefixed and end in -у, e.g.:—

беларýскі = Byelorussian, пабеларýску = in Byelorussian.

Comparative adverbs are formed from the stem of Comparative adjectives and either have no ending or end in -ей (-эй, -ай).

Superlative adverbs are formed by prefixing най- to Comparative adverbs.

Notice the following important irregular comparisons:—

дóбра	= well	—лепш (*or* лéпей) найлéпш (*or* найлéпей)
блáга, дрэ́нна	= badly	—горш (*or* гóрай) найгóрш (*or* найгóрай)
мнóга, шмат	= much	—больш (*or* бóлей) найбóльш *or* найбóлей
мáла, крыхý	= a little	—менш (*or* мéней) наймéнш *or* наймéней
скóра, хýтка, бóрзда	= quickly	— скарэ́й, хутчэ́й; барджэ́й найскарэ́й, найхутчэ́й
бéла	= white	—бялéй найбялéй
глыбóка	= deep	—глыбéй найглыбéй

шмат is generally used for "many", e.g.:—

шмат вераб'ёў = many (a lot of) sparrows

Other adverbs of place, time, manner, etc., have no uniform endings. Here are some of the commonest:—

Place:

тут	= here	дзéсь(ці)	= somewhere
там	= there	нідзé	= nowhere
сюды́	= hither	звóнку	= from outside
туды́	= thither	упéрад	= forwards
адсю́ль	= hence	назáд	= backwards
адтýль	= thence	дагары́	= up
блíзка	= near	дадóлу, унíз	= down
усю́ды	= everywhere		
дамóў, дадóму	= home(ward)		

Time:

цяпéр(ака)	= now	нéкалі	= at one time, once
тады́	= then	дагэ́туль	= till now
сёння, сягóння	= to-day	пóдню	= by day
учóра	= yesterday	зáраз	= immediately
зáўтра	= to-morrow	чáсам	= at times
пазаўчóра	= the day before yesterday	зáгадзя	= in good time
лéтась	= last year	заўсёды	= always
сёлета	= this year	нікóлі	= never
пóтым	= afterwards	скóра	= soon
улéтку	= in summer	ужóж, якрáз	= just
узíмку	= in winter	наканéц, ўрэ́шце	= at last
увóсень	= in autumn	усця́ж	= all the time
увяснý	= in spring	нядáўна	= recently
пóначы	= by night	зрáзу, рáптам	= suddenly
даўнó	= a long time ago		

Manner:

так	= thus	відáць	= evidently
бóрзда, хýтка	= quickly	маўля́ў, моў	= like; he says (when quoting)
рáзам	= together	дармá	= in vain
сілкóм	= by force	(с)умы́сна	= on purpose
інáчай, інáкш	= otherwise	хóраша	= beautifully, fine

Degree:

вéльмі	= very	давóлі, дóсыць	= enough
дýжа	= much, very	гóдзе	= enough! that will do!
тóлькі	= only	блíзка (што), бязмáла	= almost
крыхý	= a little	саўсíм, зусíм	= quite
лéдзь(ве)	= hardly	прынáмсі	= at least
мóжа	= perhaps	нáват, нáвет	= even
двóйчы	= twice, doubly		

Interrogative:

калі?	= when?	як?	= how?
дзе?	= where?	колькі?	= how much?
куды?	= whither?	чаму?	= why?
адкуль?	= from where?	навошта?	нашто? = what for?

ці — interrogative particle introducing a question, cf. Russ. ли, Polish czy, etc.; also = or

хіба = I suppose, I expect (in questions), really?

няўжо = not...really...?

Not = не no = не yes = так, але.

CONJUNCTIONS

The most important conjunctions in Byelorussian are:—

Coördinating:—

і	= and
а	= but, and (contrasting)
але	= but
ды	= but, and
дык	= so, then
(або...) або, (альбо)	= or; either...or
аж, ажно	= even; till, so that
(ані...) ані	= not even; neither...nor
аднак	= however
тож, таксама	= also
як	= as
чым(ся)	= than
быццам, нібы	= as if
ж, жа	is an emphatic particle

Subordinating:—

каб	= that, so that, in order that
калі, як	= when, if
хоць, хаця	= although, at least
што	= that
таму што	= as, because
абы	= provided that, if only
бо	= because, for
пакуль	= until, while
ледзь	= as soon as, hardly

што introduces a subordinate clause and can vary in meaning according to the word in the main clause anticipating it (not translated into English), e.g.:—

затое, затым, адтаго...што = because

Certain words, such as прынамсі (= at least), потым (= afterwards), так (= so), толькі (= only), нават (= even) can be regarded as either conjunctions or adverbs. Note: балазе = since, once (cf. Russian бла́го).

PREPOSITIONS

As the prepositions do not generally bear the stress, their spelling in Byelorussian makes them *look* different in some instances from the corresponding prepositions in other Slavonic languages, e.g. да, пад. Actually they are very similar to those in Russian, Ukrainian, and Polish, and generally govern the same cases. Compound prepositions are written with a hyphen.

With Gen.:—

без	= without	замест	= instead of
для, дзеля	= for, for the sake of	апрача, апроч	= except
да	= to, up to	з	= from; *and* off (cf. Russ. с + Gen. and из)
ад	= from	уздоўж	= along, down
у	= by, at	насупраць	= opposite, towards, against
з-за	= because of	акрамя	= except
з-пад	= from under	вакол, вокал	= round
ля, каля	= by, near, round	паводле	= according to
пасля	= after	сярод	= among

With Dat.:—

па	= along, according to (with *sing.* only); also = ... each (distributive)
к	= to (less frequently used than да)
насуперак	= despite, contrary to

With Acc.:—

па	= up to; for (to get)
пра	= about
праз	= through, because of
скрозь	= (penetrating) through
цераз	= over, through; after, in (time)

за = (to) behind; for; than (in comparisons)
пад = (to) under
у = into
на = on to
аб = against
з = about (of size, quantity)
паўз = along, through, past

With Instr.:—

над = over
за = behind (rest)
пад = under (rest)
між (памі́ж, прамі́ж)[1] = among
перад, прад = before, in front of (rest)
з = with

With Loc.:—

пры = by, near
па = over, along, after, by
у = in
на = on
аб = about, concerning

з (= "with" and "from") becomes са before a consonant group beginning with a sibilant, e.g.:—

са звóнам = with a ringing

before other groups it becomes за, e.g.:—

за ўсі́х = of all

у becomes ýва before difficult consonantal groups, e.g.:—

ýва ўсіх вёсках = in all the villages

while before vowels it is reduced to ў, e.g.:—

ў аднóй бярлóзе = in one lair
(or: у аднóй бярлóзе)

Many prepositions are used as prefixes with verbs and other words. (See "The Future Tense and the Aspects" in the "Conjugation of Verbs" below). The four prefixes уз- (= up), раз- (= apart), вы- (= out of), пера- (= over, through) are never used as prepositions. (Nor is the rarer prefix: су- = with.)

The prefixes ending in з: з-, без-, уз-, раз- and цераз-, are spelt with a final с before the voiceless consonants к, п, т, х, с, ш, ц, ч, e.g.:—

згі́нуць = to perish

but—

схадзі́ць = to go off; visit

[1]Also with Gen.

Prefixes ending in a consonant change an initial і of the following root to ы: thus з + ішлó gives зышлó (= it came off); while prefixes ending in a vowel change such an initial і to й: thus пры + ісці́ becomes прыйсці́ (= to come).

The prefix вы- is always stressed with Perfective verbs.

Note also: адыхóдзіць = to go away. Cf. Russian отходи́ть.

THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS

The verb in Byelorussian has the same number of tenses and moods in regular use as has the verb in Russian, though in Byelorussian dialects one meets with two newly formed compound tenses—a Pluperfect and a Future Perfect.

As in Russian too, there are really only two main categories of verbs, those with е as the characteristic (joining) vowel in the Present (or Perfective Future) and those with і. But owing to the phonetic spelling of the vowels in Byelorussian, both these categories are further subdivided into *(a)* finally stressed, and *(b)* non-finally stressed verbs. Furthermore those verbs in each of these four subdivisions which have their stem in a (hard) р *(r)* or a *chuintante*, have Present (or Pfve. Future) endings with the corresponding hard non-yotated vowels. There are thus eight main types of Present which, however, correspond to each other quite regularly.

In common with Russian, and in contrast to Ukrainian, West Slav, Slovenian and Serbocroätian, literary Byelorussian need not use a special form for the 1st person plural Imperative. Like Russian, it too has lost the Dual number, the Aorist and Imperfect tenses and the Supine.

The Passive voice is expressed either *(a)* by a reflexive verb[1] or *(b)* by the Past Participle Passive, with the verb "to be" expressed or implied; or *(c)* the sentence may be turned by making the passive subject

[1]The reflexive verb has throughout the suffix -ся except in the Infinitive and in the 3rd persons sing. and plur. of the Present (or Pfve. Future) tense, where it fuses with the final -ць to give -цца, e.g.:— мы́юся = I wash, мы́ешся = you (sg.) wash, but мы́ецца = he washes; мы́емся = we wash, мы́ецеся = you (pl.) wash, but мы́юцца = they wash, and мы́цца (Infin.) This -цца is reduced to -ца after another consonant, e.g.: здáсца (= he will surrender), from здасць-ся.

into the object of an Active verb, which *may* be governed by the (former) agent as the new subject, e.g.:—

(a) Дом будýецца мáйстрамі = the house is being built by the skilled workmen
(b) Вакнó разбíта кýляю = the window was smashed (lit. is having been smashed) by a bullet
(c) Мáйстры будýюць дом = the skilled workmen are building the house.

In *(a)* and *(b)* the agent is always in the Instrumental case.

The Present of Imperfective Verbs and the Future of Perfective Verbs have the following personal endings:—

Sing.	1	-у or -ю
	2	-ш
	3	-ць or no ending
Plur.	1	-м
	2	-це
	3	-ць

These endings are joined to the stem by the joining vowel e or i (see above), except in the 1st person sing. and 3rd pers. pl. Here -у is used after a consonant and -ю after a vowel in -е- verbs,[1] while -ю is the rule for -і- verbs except for those with a stem ending in -р- or a *chuintante*. In the 3rd person plural -е- verbs have -уць or -юць according to the same rule, while -і- verbs have -яць unless their stem ends in a *chuintante* or р, when they have -аць.

In the 2nd pers. plur. finally stressed verbs stress the very last syllable -це, printed here цé, a peculiarity of Byelorussian. The preceding -е- becomes (quite regularly) -я-, or -а- after a *chuintante* or р. In the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. -е- is preserved (after a *chuintante* or р, -э is used under stress and -а not under stress); in the 1st pers. plur. this е becomes ё when stressed (-о- after a *chuintante* or р): unstressed we have -е- in the 1st plur., but -а- after р or a *chuintante*. (The non-finally stressed (originally -е-) verbs with stems in a *chuintante* or р, have -а- instead of -е- or -ё- as the joining vowel.)

In the -і- verbs there are fewer variants. In both finally stressed and non-finally stressed types which have their stem in a *chuintante* or р, -і- is replaced by -ы-.

[1] -ю is also used after (soft) consonants in Cl. III verbs with -je- "joining vowel".

Thus we have the following 8 types of Present or Perfective Future tenses:—

Category I: -е- verbs.

1. With finally stressed endings:—

		нясцí = to carry	Stem in -р- браць = to take
Sing.	1	нясý	бярý
	2	нясéш	бярэ́ш
	3	нясé	бярэ́
Plur.	1	нясём	бярóм
	2	несяцé	берацé
	3	нясýць	бярýць

2. With non-finally stressed endings:—

		дýмаць = to think	Stem in -ж- казáць = to say
Sing.	1	дýмаю	кажý
	2	дýмаеш	кáжаш
	3	дýмае	кáжа
Plur.	1	дýмаем	кáжам
	2	дýмаеце	кáжаце
	3	дýмаюць	кáжуць

Category II: -і- verbs.

1. With finally stressed endings:—

		сядзéць = to sit	Stem in -ч- маўчáць = to be silent
Sing.	1	сяджý[1]	маўчý
	2	сядзíш	маўчы́ш
	3	сядзíць	маўчы́ць
Plur.	1	сядзíм	маўчы́м
	2	сядзíцé	маўчы́цé
	3	сядзя́ць	маўчáць

[1] The changes due to *j* take place in the 1st pers. sing. only of *-і-* verbs.

2. With non-finally stressed endings (except in 1st pers. sing.):—

			Stem in -р-
		палі́ць = to burn	гавары́ць = to speak
Sing.	1	палю́	гавару́
	2	па́лі́ш	гаво́рыш
	3	па́лі́ць	гаво́рыць
Plur.	1	па́лі́м	гаво́рым
	2	па́лі́це	гаво́рыце
	3	па́ляць	гаво́раць

It will already be evident that the Present endings of a Byelorussian verb are not dependent on the ending of the Infinitive which, as in other Slavonic languages, is less important for the classification of verbs.

It will be seen from the classification table below that -ць is by far the commonest termination for the *Infinitive* in Byelorussian. A few primary verbs (all of the -e- category), mostly with monosyllabic roots, have Infinitives in -ці or -ці́ (stressed), e.g.:—

нясці́ = to carry
упа́сці = to fall
гро́бці = to rake, row (3rd p.s. грабе́)
це́рці = to rub (3rd p.s. трэ)

Most verbs with roots in velars, also belonging to Class I A.a. below and to the -e- category, have Infinitives in -чы, e.g.:—

	цячы́ = to flow,	Pres.	цяку́, цячо́ш, etc.
	пячы́ = to bake,	"	пяку́, пячо́ш, etc.
	магчы́ = to be able,	"	магу́, мо́жаш, etc.
	памагчы́ = to help,	"	памагу́, памо́жаш, etc.
	берагчы́ = to guard, keep	"	берагу́, берагжо́ш, etc.
	валачы́ = to drag	"	валаку́, валачо́ш, etc.
N.B.	бегчы́ = to run, has an -i- (ы)	"	бягу́, бяжы́ш, etc., 3rd p. pl. бягу́ць

Classification of Byelorussian Verbs according to their Presents, with Subdivisions according to their Infinitives:—

For comparative and etymological purposes we give below a table of the verbs, classified according to the five main classes of Present endings originally existing in Old Slavonic, with subdivisions according to their Infinitives. It will be seen that the old

Classes I, II, and III have now all fused into one new category, as in Russian. The old Class V (the "athematic" verbs) has only two verbs left.

		3rd pers. sg. Present	*Infinitive*	
I. A.	a.	нясе́	нясці́[1]	= to carry. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
	b.	плыве́	плысці́	= to float. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., originally a vowel stem.
		раве́	раўці́	= to roar.
B.	a.	бяро́	браць	= to take. Infin. in -аць, consonantal stem.
	b.	рве	рваць	= to tear. Infin. in -аць, originally a vowel stem.
II.		су́не	су́нуць	= to move, poke (Pfve.) -*n*- stem.

III. Presents with -*je*.

1. Primary verbs.

A.	a.	зна́е	знаць[2]	= to know (Fr. connaître). Same stem in Pres. and Infin., vowel stem.
	b.	ме́ле	мало́ць	= to grind. Same stem Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
B.	a.	та́е	та́яць	= to melt. Infin. in -яць, vowel stem.
	b.	[аро́	ара́ць	= to plough] Infin. in -аць, consonantal stem.
		ка́жа	каза́ць	= to say

2. Derived verbs. All vowel stems.

A.	a.	ду́мае	ду́маць	= to think. *a*-stem.
	b.	жаўце́е	жаўце́ць	= to grow (or show) yellow. Formerly -ѣ-, now -e- stem.

[1]So also: пячо́ пячы́ = to bake
памро́ памо́рці = to die (Pfve.)
пачне́ пача́ць = to begin (Pfve.)

[2]Similarly: чу́е чуць = to hear
п'е піць = to drink

	3rd pers. sing. Present	*Infinitive*	
B.	будýе	будавáць	= to build. -у- Pres. stem, - аваць Infin.
	хвалю́е	хвалявáць	= to disturb, stir. -ю- Pres. stem, -яваць Infin. (soft stem).
	падпíсвае	падпíсваць	= to sign. -ва- Pres. stem, -ваць Infin. (hard stems).
IV. A.	хвáліць	хвалíць	= to praise } -i- throughout.
	пáліць	палíць	= to burn }
B.	вéрціць	вярцéць	= to turn. -i- in Pres., -е- from ѣ in Infin.
	ляжы́ць	ляжáць	= to lie. -ы- for i in Pres., -а- from ѣ in Infin. after *chuintante*.

V. "Athematic" verbs, with -м- in 1st pers. sing. Pres.,—only two:—

дам (1st pers. sing.), дасць (3rd pers. sing.), даць (Pfve.) = to give
ем (1st pers. sing.), есць (3rd pers. sing.), éсці (Impfve.) = to eat

(For the full conjugation of these two verbs, see below under "Irregular Verbs".)

The Future Tense and the Aspects

The usual way of forming the Future of Imperfective verbs in Byelorussian is with the Future tense of быць (= to be), followed by the Infinitive, as in Russian, Czech, Slovak, and Lusatian. E.g.:—

Sing. 1 бýду рабíць = I shall do, etc.
2 бýдзеш "
3 бýдзе "

Plur. 1 бýдзем "
2 бýдзеце "
3 бýдуць "

Less commonly to be met with is the form of Imperfective Future composed of the Infinitive with the Pfve. Present of -няць (= to take), suffixed (cf. Ukrainian), viz.:—

Sing. 1 рабíцьму
2 рабíцьмеш
3 рабíцьме

Plur. 1 рабíцьмем
2 рабíцьмеце
3 рабíцьмуць

The Future of Perfective verbs has the form of a Present, corresponding to a Perfective Infinitive. (Perfective verbs have no Present tense.) It has the same *endings* as an Imperfective Present, but the form of the stem differs in some way from the Imperfective. As in other Slavonic languages, there are several alternative ways of differentiating the two aspects. Which one of these is used for a particular verb is just a matter of usage, which the student has to learn by observation. They are:—

1. By using a different form of the same root:—

пускáць = to allow (Impfve.)	пусцíць (Pfve.) Fut.: пушчý, пýсціш
сядáць and садзíцца = to sit down (Impfve.)	сéсці (Pfve.) Fut.: сяду, сядзеш

(cf. сядзéць = to sit, be sitting)

2. By using an Infinitive ending -нуць:—

дрыжáць = to tremble (Impfve.)	дры́гнуць = to give a shudder, to start (Pfve.) Fut.: дры́гну
ківáць = to nod	кіўнýць (Pfve.) Fut.: кіўнý

3. By using a prepositional prefix:—

пісáць = to write (Impfve.)	напісáць (Pfve.) Fut.: напішý
прасíць = to ask, request (Impfve.)	папрасíць (Pfve.) Fut.: папрашý
рабíць = to do, work (Impfve.)	зрабíць (Pfve.) Fut.: зраблю́, зрóбіш

4. In some cases a totally different root is used:—

браць = to take (Impfve.) узяць (Pfve.)
Fut.: вазьму́, во́зьмеш

Occasionally the original verb is Perfective. The Imperfective aspect is then formed from it by changing the ending or extending the stem:—

купі́ць = to buy (Pfve.) купля́ць (Impfve.)
Pres.: купля́ю

даць = to give (Pfve.) дава́ць (Impfve.)
Pres.: даю́, даёш

Compound verbs, that is verbs with prefixes and Perfective because of these, can form further Imperfectives by this latter method of lengthening or extending the root, e.g.:—

падпі́саць = to sign (Pfve.) падпі́с(ы)ваць (Impfve.)

Verbs of this type are more often contracted, losing the penultimate vowel, e.g.: падпі́сваць — a peculiarity of Byelorussian morphology. (Cf. Bulgarian.)

Other compound verbs merely change the Infinitive endings, e.g.:—

адмяні́ць = to cancel (Pfve.) адмня́ць (Impfve.)
адрадзі́ць = to revive, renew (Pfve.) адраджа́ць (Impfve.)

The Future Perfect

This tense, in dialects only, is formed by the Future of быць—буду, etc., with the Past Gerund (see below), e.g.:—

я буду пайшо́ўшы = I shall have gone

This construction is a peculiarity of Byelorussian dialects.

The Past Tense

The Past tense of Byelorussian is characterized by л in the ending, as in other Slavonic languages. But this *l* (л) in the masculine singular (there are no personal endings in this tense, cf. Russian and Ukrainian) becomes ў according to the laws of Byelorussian phonetics. Thus we have the endings:—

-ў for the masc. sing.
-ла for the fem. sing.
-ло́ or -ла for the neut. sing.
-лі for the plural of all genders.

These endings are added to Infinitives of either aspect less their final -ць or -чы. The neuter ending -ла (unstressed) should be noted as peculiarly Byelorussian; it is due, of course, to the phonetic spelling of the vowels. Thus we have:—

я пісаў = I (masc.) was writing; я пісала = I (fem.) was writing
ты пісаў = you (masc.) were writing; ты пісала = you (fem.) were writing
ён пісаў = he was writing; яна́ пісала = she was writing
яно́ пісала = it (e.g. the child—дзіцянё) was writing

but—

яно́ ішло́ = (e.g. the child) was going
мы, вы, яны́ пісалі = we, you, they were writing (for all genders)

As in the other East Slav languages, owing to the absence of personal endings, the Personal Pronouns are required to indicate the person or, in the third person, a noun as subject shows the gender.

Verbs with stems in с, з, к, г, б, р have no -ў in the masc. sing., just as in the other East Slav languages they have no л, e.g.:—

ён нёс = he was carrying, from нясці́ = to carry, Pres. 1st p. s. нясу́

but—

яна́ не́сла = she was carrying
яны́ не́слі = they were carrying

Similarly—

ён тросся = he was shaking (intrans.), from трэ́сціся
ён грыз = he was gnawing, from грызці́
ён знік = he disappeared, from зні́кнуць
ён мог = he was able, from магчы́
ён аслаб = he grew weak, from асла́бнуць
ён памёр = he died, from паме́рці

It will be observed that *some* verbs in -нуць lose the syllable -ну- in the Past tense.

Verbs of Class I with roots in the dentals т and д lost these consonants before the endings of the Past tense, as in other East and South Slav languages, e.g.:—

вéсці = to lead, Pres. вядý, Past вёў, вялá, etc.
упáсці = to fall (Pfve.), Fut. упадý, Past упáў, упáла, etc.
мéсці = to sweep, Pres. мятý, Past мёў, мялá, etc.
ісцí = to go, Pres. ідý, Past ішóў, ішлá, etc. from *ішьдлъ

Verbs of Class I with roots in к restore this к in the Past tense, e.g.:—

пячы́ = to bake Pres. пякý Past пёк, пяклá, etc.

The Pluperfect Tense

This is formed, in dialects, with the Past tense of быць and the Past Gerund (see below), e.g.:—

я быў зрабíўшы = I had done
янá былá пайшóўшы = she had gone

This construction, like that of the Future Perfect, is peculiar to Byelorussian *dialects* only.

The Conditional

The Conditional is formed by using the invariable auxiliary бы or б with the Past tense of either aspect. б(ы) is separable and can follow the verb or other words in the clause. When каб (= that, if) is used, a further б is not required, e.g.:—

Не былó бы тут пастухá, ваўкí перадушы́лі б авéчак. = Had there not been a shepherd here, the wolves would have killed the sheep.

Не зыч лíха другóму, каб не давялóся самóму. = Do not wish ill to another, that it should not happen to yourself.

Мы б мо' і не крыўлялі, каб павадóў і пуг не знáлі. = We perhaps would not go crooked, if we did not know the reins and the whip.

The Imperative

This mood is characterized by special endings for the 2nd pers. sing. and the 2nd pers. plur. For the 3rd pers. sing. and plur. няхáй or хай + Present of either aspect is used, corresponding to the English construction with "let". For the 1st pers. plur. the form of the Present (or Perfective Future) may be used with or without давáй(це) for Perfective verbs.[1]

The endings for the Imperative forms, which are added to the Present stem as seen in the 2nd pers. sing., are:—

A. a. For verbs of both the -e- and the -i- categories with stem ending in a single consonant, if the ending is stressed (the stress is taken from the 1st pers. sing. Present, but the stem from the 2nd pers. Pres.):—

		-e- category	*-i- category*
2nd pers. sg.	-í e.g.	нясí! = carry! кажы́! = say!	ступí! = step!
1st pers. pl.	-ем/ём/ім *or* -éм, -ём[1] e.g.	нясём! = let us carry!	стýпім![1] = let us step!
2nd pers. pl.	-íце	нясíце! = carry!	ступíце! = step!
3rd pers. sg.	(ня)хáй нясé = let him carry!		(ня)хáй стýпіць
3rd pers. pl.	(ня)хáй нясýць = let them carry!		(ня)хáй стýпяць

After р or *chuintante* or a velar (which undergoes the *1st* Palatalization, in contrast to Old Slavonic, Serbocr., Slovenian and Czech), these endings become: -ы́, -óм or -ём, -ы́це, e.g.:—

бяры́! = take!, бярóм! *or* бярём!, бяры́це!
памажы́! = help! (Pfve.), памóжам! or памажём!, памажы́це!
пячы́! = bake!, пячóм!, пячы́це!

A.b. If the stem and not the ending is stressed, the endings for both categories of verbs are:— -ь, -ем/-ім, -ьце, e.g.:—

кінь! = throw!, кíнем!, кíньце!
не траць! = do not lose!

After a group of consonants, the endings -і, -ем, -іце are used unstressed, e.g.:—

свíсні! = (give a) whistle! свíснем!, свíсніце!

[1]Or the endings: *stressed* -éм (-óм): e.g. ступéм!, кажóм!.

After a *chuintante* or a labial, the ь is lost, so that in the 2nd pers. sing. there is no ending, e.g.:—

сарóмся! = be ashamed!
прамóў! = speak! make a speech!

лéгчы = to lie down (Pfve.), also has ляж!, ля́жам!, ля́жце!

B. For verbs with stem ending in a vowel, the endings are: -й, -ем/-ім, -йце, e.g.:—

пачуй = listen!, пачýем!,* пачýйце!

The -й of the *2nd* pers. sing. is lost after an -і, so we have:— лі! = pour!; пі! = drink!; бі = beat!; ві! = weave!.

*The endings -йма (or -ма for consonant stem verbs) for the 1st pers. pl. were described as dialectal in the authoritative Academy Grammar of 1962.

The Gerunds

The *Present Gerund* (Active) is formed from the 3rd pers. plur. of the Present (of Imperfective verbs) by substituting -чы for the final -ць. Thus:—

бярýць = they take — беручы́ = taking } -e- cate-
дýмаюць = they think— дýмаючы = thinking } gory
and—
гавóраць = they talk — гавóрачы = talking } -i-
стая́ць = they stand— стóячы = standing } cate-
(with shift of stress) gory

As in Russian and Ukrainian, this form is a verbal adverb and can refer only to the subject of the sentence. It is indeclinable and invariable as to gender. It indicates an action simultaneous to that of the main verb, which can be in any tense. E.g.:—

ён гаварыў стóячы = he spoke standing

The *Past Gerund* (Active) is formed by adding -шы to the masc. sing. of the Past tense of either aspect,[1] e.g.:—

ён нёс = he was carrying—нёсшы = having carried(Impfve.)
ён чыта́ў = he was reading —прачыта́ўшы " read (Pfve.)
ён зрабíў = he did —зрабíўшы " done (Pfve.)

[1]Imperfective Past Gerunds are rarer and confined to the literary language.

It likewise can only refer to the subject and indicates an action, continuous (Impfve.) or single and complete (Pfve.), preceding that of the main verb. E.g.:—

Чыта́ўшы такíя навíны ўвéсь год, я стра́цíў надзéю. = Having read such news for a whole year, I lost hope.

Зрабíўшы гэ́тае, ён вы́йшаў = Having done this, he went out.

or—

Зрабíўшы гэ́тае, я зна́ю... = Having done this, I know....

The Participles

These, on the other hand, are verbal adjectives, varying in gender and declinable; they can qualify any noun in a sentence.

The *Present Participle Active* is not often used. In the Nom. sing. masc. it is identical in form with the Pres. Gerund (q.v.) though sometimes a final й used to be added. In the other genders, numbers and cases it is declined exactly like a hard adjective. It is formed only from Imperfective verbs, e.g.:—

SING.	*Masc.*		*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	чыта́ючы(й)	= who is reading	чыта́ючая	чыта́ючае
Gen.	чыта́ючага		чыта́ючае	чыта́ючага
Dat.	чыта́ючаму			
etc.				

The *Past Participle Active*, likewise not much used, can similarly be identical in form with the *Past* Gerund (q.v.) in the Nom. sing. masc., or it could have the -й added. It also is declined in the other cases and genders and in the plural like a hard adjective, e.g.:—

чыта́ўшы(й) = who has read, masc., чыта́ўшая fem., чыта́ўшае neut.

A few intransitive verbs have adjectival Past Participles Active in -л- formed from the Infinitive root, e.g.: мінýць (= to pass)—мінýлы (masc.), мінýлая (fem.), мінýлае (neut.), declined like a hard adjective, = past.

The *Present Participle Passive*, formed from Imperfective transitive verbs and characterized by the suffixes -ем- for *e* verbs and -ім- for *i* verbs, added to the Present stem, followed by the hard adjectival endings, occurs mostly in learned publications and

in journals and newspapers: e.g. стварáемы = (being) formed, кірýемы = (being) led.

The *Past Participle Passive.*

This is characterized by either -н- or -т- before the adjectival termination. As in other Slavonic languages, -н- is the more general ending, but there are no absolute rules as to when -т- is used. For verbs whose Infinitive stem ends in a consonant, -е- is inserted before the final -ны, and in verbs of the -і- category the preceding consonant undergoes the change due to the *j* element, (yotation), e.g.:—

	Past Partic. Passive	
чытáць = to read	чытáны, -ая, -ае	= read
куплЯ́ць = to buy (Impfve.)	куплЯ́ны	= bought
нéсці = to carry	нéсены	= carried
пячы́ = to bake (Pres. пячэ)	пячóны	= baked
зрабíць = to do (Pfve.)	зрóблены	= done
but—		
бíць = to beat	бíты	= beaten

This participle is formed from the infinitive stem of transitive verbs of either aspect, though perfective forms are more common.

This participle is used with the verb быць (= to be), to express the Passive Voice (see above). It can also be used as an attributive adjective and is then declined like a *hard* adjective.

Verbal Nouns are formed from the Past Partic. Passive and end in -анне or -енне (-энне), e.g.:—

пытáць	= to ask	— пытáнне	= question
кармíць	= to feed	— кармлéнне	= feeding
здáрыцца	= to happen	— здарóнне	= event

Examples of the Two Conjugations of Regular Verbs

1. -*e*- category (Classes I, II, and III).

	Class I нéсці = to carry (Impfve.)	Class III[1] дýмаць = to think (Impfve.)
PRESENT		
Sing.1	нясý	дýмаю
2	нясéш	дýмаеш
3	нясé	дýмае
Plur.1	нясём	дýмаем
2	несяцé	дýмаеце
3	нясýць	дýмаюць
IMPERATIVE		
Sing.2	нясí	дýмай
Plur.1	нясём	дýмаем
2	нясíце	дýмайце
GERUNDS		
Present	несучы́	дýмаючы
Past	нёсшы	дýмаўшы
PARTICIPLES		
Pres. Active	несучы́(й)	дýмаючы(й)
Past Active	нёсшы(й)	дýмаўшы(й)
Past Passive	нéсены	(чытáны= read)
PAST TENSE		
Sing.	нёс, нéсла, нéсла	дýмаў, дýмала, дýмала (n.!)
Plur.	нéслі	дýмалі

[1]Verbs of Class III with stems ending in a consonant undergo the changes due to the presence of *j* (yotation) in *all* persons of the Present, e.g.: пісáць = to write, Pres.: пішý, пíшаш, пíша, пíшам, пíшаце, пíшуць, or казáць = to say, Pres.: кажý, etc. (See above under "Present of Imperfective verbs", p. 228-229, on endings used.)

2. *-i-* category (Class IV)

	хвалі́ць = to praise	(Stems in p or a *chuintante*) гавары́ць = to speak
PRESENT		
Sing. 1	хвалю́[1]	гавару́
2	хва́лі́ш	гаво́рыш
3	хва́лі́ць	гаво́рыць
Plur. 1	хва́лі́м	гаво́рым
2	хва́лі́це	гаво́рыце
3	хва́ляць	гаво́раць
IMPERATIVE		
Sing. 2	хвалі́	гавары́
Plur. 1	хва́лі́м	гаво́рым
2	хвалі́це	гавары́це
GERUNDS		
Present	хва́лячы	гаво́рачы
Past	хвалі́ўшы	гавары́ўшы
PARTICIPLES		
Present Active	хва́лячы(й)	гаво́рачы(й)
Past Active	хвалі́ўшы(й)	гавары́ўшы(й)
Past Passive	хва́лены	(заглу́шаны = muffled)
PAST TENSE		
Sing.	хвалі́ў, хвалі́ла, хвалі́ла	гавары́ў, гавары́ла, гавары́ла
Plur.	хвалі́лі	гавары́лі

[1]Before the -ю of the 1st Pers. sing. *only*, the influence of the *j* causes the changes of consonants due to yotation (described in "Slavonic Characteristics", No. 4). Hence we have:—

сядзе́ць = to sit, but сяджу́
любі́ць = to love, but люблю́
пусці́ць = to allow, but пушчу́
ляце́ць = to fly, but лячу́, etc.

Irregular Verbs

Class V (the "athematic" verbs)

	быць = to be	даць = to give (Pfve.)	е́сці = to eat (Impfve.)
PRESENT			
Sing. 1	ёсць or ё for all persons[1]		ем
2			ясі́
3			есць
Plur. 1			ядзі́м (ямо́)
2			ясце́
3			яду́ць
FUTURE			
Sing. 1	бу́ду	дам	(бу́ду, е́сці, etc.)
2	бу́дзеш	дасі́	
3	бу́дзе	дасць	
Plur. 1	бу́дзем	дадзі́м (дамо́)	
2	бу́дзеце	дасце́	
3	бу́дуць	даду́ць	
IMPERATIVE			
Sing. 2	быва́й[2]	дай	еш
Plur. 1	бу́дзем	дадзі́м	ядзі́м
2	быва́йце	да́йце	е́шце
GERUNDS			
Present	бу́дучы		ядучы́
Past	бы́ўшы	да́ўшы	е́ўшы
PARTICIPLES			
Pres. Act.	бу́дучы(й)		ядучы́(й)
Past Act.	бы́ўшы(й)	да́ўшы(й)	е́ўчы(й)
Past Pass.	(забы́ты = forgotten)	да́ны, дадзены	з'е́дзены
PAST TENSE			
Sing.	быў, была́, было́	даў, дала́, дало́	еў, е́ла, е́ла
Plur.	былі́	да́лі	е́лі

[1]Note: "there is (are) not (no) = нямá(ш), or even нямáшака + Gen.

[2]3rd sing. and plur. няха́й бу́дзе, бу́дуць.

Other irregular and noteworthy Verbs

"To know" is expressed by ве́даць (= to know a fact)—Pres. ве́даю (quite regular, -*e*- category, Class III)—and by знаць (= to know by sight, etc., a person or thing)—Pres. зна́ю (also a quite regular -*e*- verb, Class III).

хацéць = to want, has a Present of the -*e*- type with the -*e*- spelt *a* after the *chuintante* ч:—

Sing.	1	хачу́	Plur.	1	хо́чам
	2	хо́чаш		2	хо́чаце
	3	хо́ча		3	хо́чуць

The other forms are regular, e.g.:—

Pres. Gerund: хо́чучы
Past Tense: хацéў

мець = to have, has a Present: ма́ю, ма́еш, etc., ма́юць, Past меў and Imperative: мей.

магчы́ = to be able, has a regular -*e*- Present with the 1st Palatalization: магу́, мо́жаш, etc., мо́гуць. Past: мог, fem. магла́, etc.

бе́гчы = to run, has an -*i*- Present with an irregular 1st pers. sing. and 3rd pers. plur.: бягу́, бяжы́ш, etc., бягу́ць.

ссаць = to suck, has Present: ссу, ссеш, etc., ссуць.

пець = to sing, is conjugated regularly in the -*e*- category (Class III, 1.A.a.), Present: пяю́, пяе́ш, etc., пяю́ць; Past: пеў, пе́ла, etc.

дзьмуць = to blow, has alternative Presents: ду́ю, and дзьму.

Monosyllabic Infinitives in -ыць such as мыць (= to wash), have Present like: мы́ю, мы́еш, etc., мы́юць.

віць = to weave, has Present: ую́, уе́ш, уе́, уём, уяце́, ую́ць.

-яць, -няць (Pfve.), -іма́ць and браць (Impfve.), are all Infinitives meaning "to take". The corresponding Presents are: (Pfve.) Future -йму, ймеш, etc., and (Impfve.) бяру́, бярэ́ш, etc., with Pasts -няў, and браў. Pfve. also узя́ць, Future: вазьму́, во́зьмеш, etc. Notice: прыма́ць, прыма́ю = to accept, Pfve. прыня́ць, пры(й)му́.

стая́ць = to stand, is a regular -*i*- category verb except in the Infinitive. It has alternative forms in the Imperative: стой! *and* стаі́!.

спаць = to sleep, is also a regular -*i*- verb except in the Infinitive. Present: сплю, спіш, etc., спяць.

не́льга means "one cannot" and нямо́жна means "one must not", and correspond to Russian нельзя́ and Polish: nie można. (They are invariable.)

Verbs of Going and Conveying

These are essentially the same as in Russian and Ukrainian, with some variations of stress and, of course, with variations due to the phonetic spelling of vowels in Byelorussian.

To go (on foot):

	Impfve.: ісці́		Pfve.: пайсці́
Pres.:	іду́, ідзе́ш	Fut.:	пайду́, по́йдзеш
Past:	ішо́ў, ішла́		пайшо́ў, пайшла́
Imper.:	ідзі́, ідзе́м, ідзі́це		пайдзі́, пайдзі́це

Freq.: хадзі́ць

Pres.:	хаджу́, хо́дзіш
Past:	хадзі́ў, хадзі́ла
Imper.:	хадзі́, хадзі́це

To go (be conveyed):

	Impfve.: е́хаць		Pfve.: пае́хаць
Pres.:	е́ду, е́дзеш	Fut.:	пае́ду, пае́дзеш
Past:	е́хаў, е́хала		пае́хаў, пае́хала
Imper.:	е́дзь		пае́дзь

Freq.: е́здзіць

Pres.:	е́зджу, е́здзіш
Past:	е́здзіў, е́здзіла
Imper.:	——

To come (on foot):

	Impfve. *and* Freq.: прыхо́дзіць		Pfve.: прыйсці́
Pres.:	прыхаджу́, прыхо́дзіш	Fut.:	прыйду́, прыйдзеш
Past:	прыхадзі́ў, прыхадзі́ла (*also* прыхо́дзіў)		прышо́ў, прышла́
Imper.:	прыхо́дзь, прыхо́дзьце)		прыдзі́, прыдзі́це

To come (be conveyed):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: прыязджа́ць — Pfve.: прые́хаць

Pres.: прыязджа́ю, прыязджа́еш — Fut.: прые́ду, прые́дзеш
Past: прыязджа́ў, прыязджа́ла — прые́хаў, прые́хала
Imper.: прыязджа́й — прые́дзь

Similarly:—to go away (on foot) = адыхо́дзіць, адысці́
to go away (conveyed) = ад'язджа́ць, ад'е́хаць
to go out (on foot) = выхо́дзіць, выйсці́—
Past: вы́йшаў
to go out (conveyed) = выязджа́ць, вы́ехаць

On the same scheme:—

To carry:

Impfve.: не́сці — Pfve.: пане́сці

Pres.: нясу́, нясе́ш — Fut.: панясу́, панясе́ш
Past: нёс, не́сла — панёс, пане́сла
Imper.: нясі́, нясі́це — панясі́, панясі́це

Freq.: насі́ць

Pres.: нашу́, но́сіш
Past: насі́ў, насі́ла
Imper.: насі́, насі́це

To bring:

Impfve. *and* Freq.: прыно́сіць — Pfve.: прыне́сці
Pres.: прыно́шу, прыно́сіш — Fut.: прынясу́, прынясе́ш

To lead:

Impfve.: ве́сці — Pfve.: паве́сці

Pres.: вяду́, вядзе́ш — Fut.: павяду́, павядзе́ш
Past: вёў, вяла́ — павёў, павяла́
Imper.: вядзі́, вядзі́це — павядзі́, павядзі́це

Freq.: вадзі́ць

Pres.: ваджу́, во́дзіш
Past: вадзі́ў, вадзі́ла
Imper.: вадзі́, вадзі́це

To bring (a person):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: прыво́дзіць — Pfve.: прыве́сці
Pres.: прыво́джу, прыво́дзіш — Fut.: прывяду́, прывядзе́ш

To convey:

Impfve.: ве́зці — Pfve.: паве́зці

Pres.: вязу́, вязе́ш — Fut.: павязу́, павязе́ш
Past: вёз, ве́зла — павёз, паве́зла
Imper.: вязі́, вязі́це — павязі́, павязі́це

Freq.: вазі́ць

Pres.: важу́, во́зіш
Past: вазі́ў, вазі́ла
Imper.: вазі́, вазі́це

To bring (in a vehicle):

Impfve. *and* Freq.: прыво́зіць — Pfve.: прыве́зці
Pres.: прыво́жу, прыво́зіш — Fut.: прывязу́, прывязе́ш
Past: прывёз, прыве́зла

TEXTS

I.
Паводле Лукі, VIII

5. выйшаў сейбіт сеяць семя свае; і калі ён сеяў, іншае ўпала пры дарозе і было патаптана і птушкі нябесныя паклявалі яго;
6. а іншае ўпала на камень і, узыйшоўшы, засохла, бо не мела вільгаці;
7. а іншае ўпала між цярнінаю, і вырасла цярніна і заглушыла яго;
8. а іншае ўпала на добрую зямлю і, узыйшоўшы, прынясло плод стакротны. Сказаўшы гэтае, клікнуў: хто мае вушы слухаць, няхай слухае.

II.
Якуб Колас

НАШ РОДНЫ КРАЙ

Край наш бедны, край наш родны!
Лес, балота ды пясок...
Чуць дзе крыху луг прыгодны...
Хвойнік, мох ды верасок.

А туманы, як пялёнка!
Засцілаюць лес і гай.
Ой, ты, бедная старонка!
Ой, забыты богам край!

Наша поле кепска родзіць,
Бедна тут жыве народ,
У гразі жыве ён, ходзіць,
А працуе—льецца пот.

Пазіраюць сумна вёскі,
Глянеш—сэрца забаліць.
На дварэ—паленне, цёскі,
Куча сметніку ляжыць.

Крыж збуцвелы пры дарозе,
Кучка топаляў сухіх...
Сцішна, нудна, бы ў астрозе
Ці на могілках якіх.

А як песня панясецца—
Колькі ў песні той нуды!
Уцякаў-бы, бег, здаецца,
Сам не ведаеш куды.

Край наш родны, бедна поле!
Ты глядзіш, як сірата,
Сумны ты, як наша доля,
Як ты, наша цемната.

III.
Якуб Колас

НАШЫ ДНІ

Праімчаўся віхор, пыл і затхласць размёў.
Сцяг чырвоны разняўшы ўгары...
Вы, таварышы, вы ўладары
Гэтых фабрык, заводаў і вольных палёў.
Зарунела ралля,
Твар мяняе зямля,
Новы засеў вянкі перамогі заплёў.
У нябыт адыходзіць закляцце вякоў,
Гэты здзек, гэты жах кабалы,
Гэта цемра папоўскай імглы,
Гэта тхлань і насланне ліхіх ведзьмакоў—
Запалілі агні
Большэвіцкія дні
І спалілі нашчэнт звон іржавых акоў.
Не пазнаеш зямлі і вясковых людзей—
Не, не тыя, не тыя яны!
Іншым клопатам людзі паўны:
Крута іх павярнуў большэвік-чарадзей.
Новы гоман наўсцяж,
Замест "мой" громка "наш"
Вылятае з калгасных здаровых грудзей.
Знята ўлада зямлі, векавечны прыгон,
Што пракляццем лажыўся на нас,

Бляск фальшывы навекі пагас...
Я вітаю вялікі шырокі разгон
Нашых дзён маладых,
Гоман творчасці іх...
Дык ярчэй-жа гары, сонца радасных дзён!

IV.
Пімен Панчэнка

ЯБЛЫНЯ

Стаяла яблыня ля вёскі,
Як падарожнік між дарог.
Вясною падалі пялёсткі
нібы сняжынкі, на мурог.

Ніхто не дбаў аб ёй, і вецер
хацеў галіны пакрышыць.
А побач—помнік нейчай смерці—
гнілі два сумныя крыжы.

Як сірата расла... І кожны
пахучым кветкам крыўду нёс.
І ціха скардзілася пожням
Яна пра свой паганы лёс.

Ды кожны год аздобай новай
здзіўляла птушак і людзей...
А гэтай сонечнай вясною
такі выдатны выпаў дзень:

Мы перавезлі беражліва
Яе у сад, кагласны сад,
дзе на ігрушах і на слівах
цвіце блакітная раса...

—Расці!—сказалі ёй з пашанай,
—Гадуй нам сочныя плады.
—Расці!—загрукаў гром, і хмара
паслала дожджык малады.

І ападаў на сад са звонам
бліскучых, буйных, кропель рой...
А з поўдня ехаў май зялёны
да нас з вясёлкавай дугой...

V.
Алесь Звонак

—Песня—

Тры гудкі...
Пара адчаліваць...
Смаліць дым
Праз дзве трубы...
Выйдзі, любая, на палубу,—
Штосьці ў сэрцы шмат журбы...
Выйдзі, любая, на палубу,
Белай хустачкай махні,—
Нам з табою не пабачыцца
Да наступнае вясны...

Сумны я
Стаю на прыстані,
Зірк задымлены тугой...
Не чакаў такое ростані
Я з каханаю табой,—
Ты плывеш
На поўдзень сонечны,—
Шлях вядзе на поўнач мой...

У Батуме кіпарысавым,
Калі сэрца сум кране,
Ўспомні любага далёкага,
Адзінокага мяне...
Я таксама
Ўспомню любую
І далёкую сваю.
Да вясны наступнай сонечнай
Ў сэрцы памяць затаю..

І не раз
У вечар восеньскі,
Ў сцюжу снежаньскіх завей
Думка—лебедзь белакрылая
Ў чорнамор'е паплыве,
Дзе ў Батуме кіпарысавым
Мая любая жыве...

Тры гудкі...
Пара адчаліваць...
Смаліць дым
Праз дзве трубы...
Выйдзі, любая, на палубу,—
Штосьці ў сэрцы шмат журбы...

Выйдзі, любая, на палубу,
Белай хустачкай махні,—
Нам з табою не пабачыцца
Да наступнае вясны.

VI. (Folktale—казка.)

ЗАЛОМКА

У нашай вёсцы жыў адзін вядзьмар. Яго зналі не толькі ў суседніх сёлах, але мо' ў цэлай акрузе. Гэта быў такі вялікі вядзьмар, што ён усё ведаў. Ніхто не смеў яму сказаць наперакор, так яго баяліся.

Толькі быў там адзін чалавек; ён многа па свету хадзіў: кажуць быў аж у Кралёўцы. От гэты чалавек не баяўся ведзьмара і ўсё казаў, што вядзьмар толькі чмуціць. Але яму не верылі.

От той чалавек пайшоў у сваё жыта і зрабіў там заламку.

Праз тыдзень, а мо' і два, прыходзіць да таго ведзьмара і просіць, каб ён вырваў тую заламку.

Пайшлі яны ў поле.

Падышоў вядзьмар к заламцы на крокаў дваццаць ды і кажа, што не можа ісці далей, гэткая моцная заламка. Скінуў гэта вядзьмар нагавіцы і сарочку, ды так, як маці радзіла, папоўз да заламкі ракам. Паўзе і ўсё стогне, што вельмі моцна ўздзеяна.

Маўчаў, гэта маўчаў той чалавек, а як падышлі другія людзі, сеў на ведзьмара вярхом, дастаў з-пад палы гарапнік ды давай паласаваць ведзьмара.

—Вось-жа,—кажа,—я табе пакажу, як моцна ўздзеяна, бо гэтую заламку я зрабіў сам.

Раве немым голасам вядзьмар, а той яго лупіць.

Біў, біў пакуль здаволіўся ды і пытае: а што, не будзеш больш добрых людзей чмуціць?

—Не буду,—просіцца вядзьмар,—толькі пусці жывога.

Пусціў той чалавек ведзьмара. Усхапіўся гад, забыў і сарочку і нагавіцы апрануць, ды так і сунуў наўцекача.

Падзівіліся людзі, думалі перш, што вядзьмар таго чалавека са свету зжыве, але бачаць, што той чалавек жыве сабе і не лыс.

Годзе вядзьмар з тае пары чмуціць.

Дык вось якія ведзьмары.

VII.
Міхась Лынькоў

ІРЫНА

Як шчасліва, сонечна, адцвілі гэтыя апошнія гады. Пяць год таму назад, як сышліся яны, пажаніліся. Нават і не заўважыла Ірынка, як адляцела бесклапотнае дзявоцтва, з песнямі, з пагулянкамі, з познімі карагодамі. З лёгкімі і мінучымі дзявочымі крыўдамі. З вясновымі світанкамі, калі пахучы і празрысты бярозавы клейкі ліст, калі росы на золаку бываюць кусачымі, і ў кожным кусту столькі песень, што заслухаешся іх і забудзеш, а колькі-ж раз цябе пацалуе... Яны паставілі маленькі, чысценькі домік пад старай ліпай. Пасадзілі нескалькі яблынь, вішань. Пад вокнамі цэлы кветнік. Былі то Ірынкіны клопаты, каб весела было маленькаму Васільку. Ён так любіў краскі і пчол, матылёў, гудучых майскіх хрушчоў, залятаўшых у зялёны палісаднік. Па ранейшаму пела песні Ірына, і яшчэ дружней гарэла праца ў яе руках, руках калгаснай ільнаводкі. Яна была ўсё той-жа рэзвай клапатунняй і магла паспрачацца з любой дзяўчынай у калгасе: і ў песні, і ў дасціпным жарце, і на любой працы. Таму вось па нядзелях заўседы заліваўся гармонік у іх пад акном, шумела гаманлівая моладзь, гулка гудзела ўтаптаная зямля— хлопцы і дзяўчаты скакалі кадрылі, кружыліся ў лявонісе, у бясконцых крыжачках і польках.

Харошы быў гарманіст Ігнась—муж Ірынкі, майстар на працу і на весялосць.

Усё гэта скончылася, абарвалася, як радасны сон. Ігнась пайшоў разам з другімі на вайну. Развітаўся, узяў на рукі чатырохгадовага Васілька, расцалаваў яго і, углядаючыся ў сінія і пранозлівыя, як цвет ільняны, васільковыя вачаняты, сказаў, папрасіў:

—Захавай яго... Які-ж ён асілак у нас... во... Адзін вот толькі... Ну, што-ж...

Спяшаючы, пацалаваў абодвух, пайшоў. Дзе ён цяпер?

VIII.
Янка Купала

А ХТО ТАМ ІДЗЕ?

А хто там ідзе, а хто там ідзе
У агромністай такой грамадзе?
—Беларусы.

А што яны нясуць на худых плячах,
На руках у крыві, на нагах у лапцях?
—Сваю крыўду.

А куды нясуць гэту крыўду ўсю,
А куды-ж нясуць на паказ сваю?
—На свет цэлы.

А хто гэта іх, не адзін мільён,
Крыўду несць наўчыў, разбудзіў іх сон?
—Бяда, гора.

А чаго-ж, чаго захацелася ім,
Пагарджаным век, ім, сляпым, глухім?
—Людзьмі звацца.

IX.
Янка Купала

ЗАКЛЯТАЯ КВЕТКА

Чуць толькі купальскае свята
Набліжыцца з ночкай сваей,
Як папараць кветкай заклятай
Чаруе няшчасных людзей...

З надзеяй, і верай, і сілай
Зусюль, куды-б дзе ні зірнуць,
Праз высі, даліны, магілы,
Па кветку бягуць і бягуць!

...Сава пяе песню разлукі,
Лапоча крыламі кажан,—
Мільённыя цягнуцца рукі,
Дзе дрэмле купальскі курган.

Тых радасцю вочы смяюцца,
Тым зрэнкі крывёй заліло,
Піхаюцца, корчацца, б'юцца,
Мяшаецца праўда і зло.

Пачнуцца галінкі хіліцца,
Шасцяць верасы пад нагой.
Туж-туж ужо кветку схапіці!
Сціскаецца гэты і той,—

Тыц—стой!... Глядзяць зорніцы сведкі,
Пявун адгукнуўся ў сяле—
Ні ночкі купальскай, ні кветкі!
Усё затаілася ў мгле...

Залыпалі блудныя вочы,
Мільёны уздохаў ляціць.
Сава не заціхне—рагоча,
Крыламі кажан шапаціць...

След костачкі сцелюць—услалі,
Здаецца, ўжо час аддыхнуць,
Надойдзе-ж хай толькі купалле,—
Мільёны па кветку бягуць.

OTHER BOOKS FROM SLAVICA PUBLISHERS

Andrej Kodjak: *Pushkin's I. P. Belkin*, 1979.
Demetrius J. Koubourlis, ed.: *Topics in Slavic Phonology*, 1974.
Michael K. Launer: *Elementary Russian Syntax*, 1974.
Jules F. Levin & others: *Reading Modern Russian*, 1979.
Maurice I. Levin: *Russian Declension and Conjugation: A Structural Description with Exercises*, 1978.
Alexander Lipson: *A Russian Course*, 1977.
Thomas F. Magner, ed.: *Slavic Linguistics and Language Teaching*, 1976.
Mateja Matejić & Dragan Milivojević: *An Anthology of Medieval Serbian Literature in English*, 1978.
Vasa D. Mihailovich and Mateja Matejić: *Yugoslav Literature in English A Bibliography of Translations and Criticism (1821-1975)*, 1976.
Alexander D. Nakhimovsky and Richard L. Leed: *Advanced Russian*, 1980.
Felix J. Oinas, ed. *Folklore Nationalism & Politics*.
Hongor Oulanoff: *The Prose Fiction of V. A. Kaverin*.
Jan L. Perkowski: *Vampires of the Slavs*, 1976.
Lester A. Rice: *Hungarian Morphological Irregularities*, 1970.
Midhat Ridjanović: *A Synchronic Study of Verbal Aspect in English and Serbo-Croatian*, 1976.
David F. Robinson: *Lithuanian Reverse Dictionary*, 1976
Don K. Rowney & G. Edward Orchard, eds.: *Russian and Slavic History*, 1977.
Ernest A. Scatton: *Bulgarian Phonology*, 1975.
William R. Schmalstieg: *Introduction to Old Church Slavic*, 1976.
Michael Shapiro: *Aspects of Russian Morphology A Semiotic Investigation*, 1969.
Rudolph M. Susel, ed.: *Papers in Slovene Studies*, 1977
Charles E. Townsend: *Russian Word-Formation*, corrected reprint, 1975.
Charles E. Townsend: *The Memoirs of Princess Natal'ja Borisovna Dolgorukaja*, 1977.
Daniel C. Waugh: *The Great Turkes Defiance On the History of the Apocryphal Correspondence of the Ottoman Sultan in its Muscovite and Russian Variants*, 1978.
Susan Wobst: *Russian Readings & Grammar Terminology*, 1978.
Dean S. Worth: *A Bibliography of Russian Word-Formation*, 1977.